

RSX-11M
I/O Drivers Reference Manual
Order No. DEC-11-OMDRA-A-D

RSX-11M Version 1

11/74 - 14

Order additional copies as directed on the Software
Information page at the back of this document.

digital equipment corporation • maynard, massachusetts

The information in this document is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by Digital Equipment Corporation. Digital Equipment Corporation assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this manual.

The software described in this document is furnished to the purchaser under a license for use on a single computer system and can be copied (with inclusion of DIGITAL's copyright notice) only for use in such system, except as may otherwise be provided in writing by DIGITAL.

Digital Equipment Corporation assumes no responsibility for the use or reliability of its software on equipment that is not supplied by DIGITAL.

Associated Manuals

Refer to the User's Guide to RSX-11M
Manuals, DEC-11-OMUGA-A-D.

Copyright © 1974 Digital Equipment Corporation

The HOW TO OBTAIN SOFTWARE INFORMATION page, located at the back of this document, explains the various services available to DIGITAL software users.

The postage prepaid READER'S COMMENTS form on the last page of this document requests the user's critical evaluation to assist us in preparing future documentation.

The following are trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation:

CDP	DIGITAL	INDAC	PS/8
COMPUTER LAB	DNC	KA10	QUICKPOINT
COMSYST	EDGRIN	LAB-8	RAD-8
COMTEX	EDUSYSTEM	LAB-8/e	RSTS
DDT	FLIP CHIP	LAB-K	RSX
DEC	FOCAL	OMNIBUS	RTM
DECCOMM	GLC-8	OS/8	RT-11
DECTAPE	IDAC	PDP	SABR
DIBOL	IDACS	PHA	TYPESET 8
			UNIBUS

CONTENTS

		Page
PREFACE		xv
0.1	MANUAL OBJECTIVES AND READER CLASS ASSUMPTIONS	xv
0.2	STRUCTURE OF THE DOCUMENT	xv
0.3	CONVENTIONS USED IN THIS MANUAL	xvii
CHAPTER 1	RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT	
1.1	OVERVIEW OF RSX-11M I/O	1-1
1.2	RSX-11M DEVICES	1-2
1.3	LOGICAL UNITS	1-4
1.3.1	Logical Unit Number	1-4
1.3.2	Logical Unit Table	1-4
1.3.3	Changing LUN Assignments	1-5
1.4	ISSUING AN I/O REQUEST	1-6
1.4.1	QIO Macro Format	1-7
1.4.2	Significant Events	1-10
1.4.3	System Traps	1-11
1.5	DIRECTIVE PARAMETER BLOCKS	1-12
1.6	I/O-RELATED MACROS	1-13
1.6.1	The QIO\$ Macro: Issuing an I/O Request	1-15
1.6.2	The DIR\$ Macro: Executing a Directive	1-15
1.6.3	The .MCALL Directive: Retrieving System Macros	1-15
1.6.4	The ALUN\$ Macro: Assigning a LUN	1-16
1.6.5	The GLUN\$ Macro: Retrieving LUN Information	1-18
1.6.6	The ASTX\$\$ Macro: Terminating AST Service	1-21
1.6.7	The WTSE\$ Macro: Waiting for an Event Flag	1-21
1.7	STANDARD I/O FUNCTIONS	1-22
1.7.1	IO.ATT: Attaching to an I/O Device	1-23
1.7.2	IO.DET: Detaching from an I/O Device	1-24
1.7.3	IO.KIL: Canceling I/O Requests	1-24
1.7.4	IO.RLB: Reading a Logical Block	1-25
1.7.5	IO.RVB: Reading a Virtual Block	1-25
1.7.6	IO.WLB: Writing a Logical Block	1-25
1.7.7	IO.WVB: Writing a Virtual Block	1-26
1.8	I/O COMPLETION	1-26
1.9	RETURN CODES	1-27
1.9.1	Directive Conditions	1-28
1.9.2	I/O Status Conditions	1-30

		Page
CHAPTER	2	TERMINAL DRIVER
	2.1	INTRODUCTION 2-1
	2.1.1	ASR-33/35 Teletypes 2-2
	2.1.2	KSR-33/35 Teletypes 2-2
	2.1.3	LA30 DECwriters 2-2
	2.1.4	LA36 DECwriter 2-2
	2.1.5	RT02 Alphanumeric Display Terminal and RT02-C Badge Reader/Alphanumeric Display Terminal 2-3
	2.1.6	VT05B Alphanumeric Display Terminal 2-3
	2.1.7	VT50 Alphanumeric Display Terminal 2-3
	2.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO 2-3
	2.3	QIO MACRO 2-5
	2.4	STATUS RETURNS 2-6
	2.5	CONTROL CHARACTERS AND SPECIAL KEYS 2-8
	2.5.1	Control Characters 2-8
	2.5.2	Special Keys 2-10
	2.6	VERTICAL FORMAT CONTROL 2-10
	2.7	TERMINAL INTERFACES 2-11
	2.7.1	DH11 Asynchronous Serial Line Multiplexer 2-11
	2.7.2	DJ11 Asynchronous Serial Line Multiplexer 2-12
	2.7.3	DL11 Asynchronous Serial Line Interface 2-12
	2.8	PROGRAMMING HINTS 2-12
	2.8.1	Terminal Line Truncation 2-12
	2.8.2	ESCAPE Code Conversion 2-12
	2.8.3	RT02-C Control Function 2-12
CHAPTER	3	DISK DRIVERS
	3.1	INTRODUCTION 3-1
	3.1.1	RF11/RS11 Fixed-Head Disk 3-1
	3.1.2	RJP04 Pack Disk 3-2
	3.1.3	RJS03 Fixed-Head Disk 3-2
	3.1.4	RJS04 Fixed-Head Disk 3-2
	3.1.5	RK11/RK05 Cartridge Disk 3-2
	3.1.6	RP11-C/RP03 Pack Disk 3-2
	3.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO 3-3
	3.3	QIO MACRO 3-3
	3.4	STATUS RETURNS 3-4
CHAPTER	4	DECTAPE DRIVER
	4.1	INTRODUCTION 4-1
	4.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO 4-1

		Page	
	4.3	QIO MACRO	4-2
	4.3.1	Standard QIO Functions	4-2
	4.3.2	Device-Specific QIO Functions	4-4
	4.4	STATUS RETURNS	4-4
	4.4.1	DECTape Recovery Procedures	4-7
	4.4.2	Select Recovery	4-8
	4.5	PROGRAMMING HINTS	4-8
	4.5.1	DECTape Transfers	4-8
	4.5.2	Reverse Reading and Writing	4-8
	4.5.3	Speed Considerations When Reversing Direction	4-8
	4.5.4	Aborting a Task	4-9
CHAPTER	5	MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS	
	5.1	INTRODUCTION	5-1
	5.1.1	TM11 Magnetic Tape	5-2
	5.1.2	TJU16 Magnetic Tape	5-2
	5.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO	5-2
	5.3	QIO MACRO	5-3
	5.3.1	Standard QIO Functions	5-3
	5.3.2	Device-Specific QIO Functions	5-4
	5.3.2.1	IO.RWU	5-4
	5.3.2.2	IO.SEC	5-5
	5.4	STATUS RETURNS	5-9
	5.4.1	Select Recovery	5-12
	5.4.2	Retry Procedures for Reads and Writes	5-12
	5.5	PROGRAMMING HINTS	5-12
	5.5.1	Block Size	5-12
	5.5.2	Importance of Resetting Tape Characteristics	5-13
	5.5.3	Aborting a Task	5-13
	5.5.4	Writing an Even-Parity Zero	5-13
CHAPTER	6	CASSETTE DRIVER	
	6.1	INTRODUCTION	6-1
	6.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO	6-1
	6.3	QIO MACRO	6-2
	6.3.1	Standard QIO Functions	6-3
	6.3.2	Device-Specific QIO Functions	6-3
	6.4	STATUS RETURNS	6-4
	6.4.1	Cassette Recovery Procedures	6-7
	6.5	STRUCTURE OF CASSETTE TAPE	6-7
	6.6	PROGRAMMING HINTS	6-8
	6.6.1	Importance of Rewinding	6-8

		Page	
	6.6.2	End-of-File and IO.SPF	6-9
	6.6.3	The Space Functions, IO.SPB and IO.SPF	6-9
	6.6.4	Verification of Write Operations	6-9
	6.6.5	Block Length	6-9
	6.6.6	Logical End-of-tape	6-9
CHAPTER	7	LINE PRINTER DRIVER	
	7.1	INTRODUCTION	7-1
	7.1.1	LP11 Line Printer	7-2
	7.1.2	LS11 Line Printer	7-2
	7.1.3	LV11 Line Printer	7-2
	7.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO	7-2
	7.3	QIO MACRO	7-3
	7.4	STATUS RETURNS	7-4
	7.4.1	Ready Recovery	7-5
	7.5	VERTICAL FORMAT CONTROL	7-6
	7.6	PROGRAMMING HINTS	7-6
	7.6.1	RUBOUT Character	7-7
	7.6.2	Print Line Truncation	7-7
	7.6.3	Aborting a Task	7-7
CHAPTER	8	CARD READER DRIVER	
	8.1	INTRODUCTION	8-1
	8.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO	8-1
	8.3	QIO MACRO	8-2
	8.3.1	Standard QIO Functions	8-2
	8.3.2	Device-Specific QIO Function	8-3
	8.4	STATUS RETURNS	8-4
	8.4.1	Card Input Errors and Recovery	8-4
	8.4.2	Ready and Card Reader Check Recovery	8-7
	8.4.3	I/O Status Conditions	8-8
	8.5	FUNCTIONAL CAPABILITIES	8-10
	8.5.1	Control Characters	8-10
	8.6	CARD READER DATA FORMATS	8-11
	8.6.1	Alphanumeric Format (026 and 029)	8-11
	8.6.2	Binary Format	8-12
	8.7	PROGRAMMING HINTS	8-13
	8.7.1	Input Card Limitation	8-13
	8.7.2	Aborting a Task	8-13

		Page
CHAPTER	9	MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS
9.1	INTRODUCTION	9-1
9.1.1	DL11-E Asynchronous Line Interface	9-2
9.1.2	DP11 Synchronous Line Interface	9-2
9.1.3	DU11 Synchronous Line Interface	9-3
9.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO	9-3
9.3	QIO MACRO	9-4
9.3.1	Standard QIO Functions	9-4
9.3.2	Device-Specific QIO Functions	9-5
9.3.2.1	IO.HDX	9-5
9.3.2.2	IO.INL and IO.TRM	9-6
9.3.2.3	IO.RNS	9-6
9.3.2.4	IO.SYN	9-6
9.3.2.5	IO.WNS	9-6
9.4	STATUS RETURNS	9-7
9.5	PROGRAMMING HINTS	9-8
9.5.1	Transmission Validation	9-8
9.5.2	Redundancy Checking	9-9
9.5.3	Half-Duplex Considerations	9-9
9.5.4	Low-Traffic Sync Character Considerations	9-9
9.5.5	Vertical Parity Support	9-9
9.5.6	Importance of IO.INL	9-10
9.6	PROGRAMMING EXAMPLE	9-10
CHAPTER	10	ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS
10.1	INTRODUCTION	10-1
10.1.1	AFC11 Analog-to-Digital Converter	10-1
10.1.2	AD01-D Analog-to-Digital Converter	10-2
10.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO	10-2
10.3	QIO MACRO	10-2
10.3.1	Standard QIO Function	10-2
10.3.2	Device-Specific QIO Function	10-2
10.4	FORTRAN INTERFACE	10-4
10.4.1	Synchronous and Asynchronous Process Control I/O	10-4
10.4.2	The isb Status Array	10-4
10.4.3	FORTRAN Subroutine Summary	10-5
10.4.4	AIRD/AIRDW: Performing Input of Analog Data in Random Sequence	10-6
10.4.5	AISQ/AISQW: Reading Sequential Analog Input Channels	10-6
10.4.6	ASADLN: Assigning a LUN to AD0:	10-7
10.4.7	ASAFLN: Assigning a LUN to AF0:	10-7
10.5	STATUS RETURNS	10-8
10.5.1	FORTRAN Interface Values	10-10

	Page	
10.6	FUNCTIONAL CAPABILITIES	10-10
10.6.1	Control and Data Buffers	10-10
10.7	PROGRAMMING HINTS	10-11
10.7.1	Use of A/D Gain Ranges	10-11
10.7.2	Identical Channel Numbers on the AFC11	10-11
10.7.3	AFC11 Sampling Rate	10-11
10.7.4	Restricting the Number of AD01-D Conversions	10-11
CHAPTER 11	UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER	
11.1	INTRODUCTION	11-1
11.1.1	Creating the UDC11 Driver	11-1
11.1.2	Accessing UDC11 Modules	11-2
11.1.2.1	Driver Services	11-2
11.1.2.2	Direct Access	11-3
11.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO	11-3
11.3	QIO MACRO	11-3
11.3.1	Standard QIO Function	11-3
11.3.2	Device-Specific QIO Functions	11-4
11.3.2.1	Contact Interrupt Digital Input (W733 Modules)	11-5
11.3.2.2	Timer (W734 I/O Counter Modules)	11-7
11.3.2.3	Latching Digital Output (M685, M803, and M805 Modules)	11-8
11.3.2.4	Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADU01 Module)	11-8
11.4	DIRECT ACCESS	11-8
11.4.1	Defining the UDC11 Configuration	11-9
11.4.1.1	Assembly Procedure for UDCOM.MAC	11-9
11.4.1.2	Symbols Defined by UDCOM.MAC	11-10
11.4.2	Including UDC11 Symbolic Definitions in the System Object Module Library	11-12
11.4.3	Referencing the UDC11 through a Common Block	11-12
11.4.3.1	Creating a Global Common Block	11-12
11.4.3.2	Making the Common Block Resident	11-14
11.4.3.3	Linking a Task to the UDC11 Common Block	11-14
11.5	FORTRAN INTERFACE	11-14
11.5.1	Synchronous and Asynchronous Process Control I/O	11-15
11.5.2	The isb Status Array	11-15
11.5.3	FORTRAN Subroutine Summary	11-16
11.5.4	AIRD/AIRDW: Performing Input of Analog Data in Random Sequence	11-18
11.5.5	AISQ/AISQW: Reading Sequential Analog Input Channels	11-19
11.5.6	AO/AOW: Performing Analog Output	11-19
11.5.7	ASUDLN: Assigning a LUN to UD0:	11-20
11.5.8	CTDI: Connecting to Contact Interrupts	11-20
11.5.9	CTTI: Connecting to Timer Interrupts	11-21
11.5.10	DFDI: Disconnecting from Contact Interrupts	11-22
11.5.11	DFTI: Disconnecting from Timer Interrupts	11-23
11.5.12	DI/DIW: Reading Several Contact Sense Fields	11-23

	Page	
11.5.13	DOL/DOLW: Latching or Unlatching Several Fields	11-24
11.5.14	DOM/DOMW: Pulsing Several Fields	11-24
11.5.15	RCIPT: Reading a Contact Interrupt Point	11-25
11.5.16	RDDI: Reading Contact Interrupt Data From a Circular Buffer	11-26
11.5.17	RDTI: Reading Timer Interrupt Data From a Circular Buffer	11-27
11.5.18	RSTI: Reading a Timer Module	11-27
11.5.19	SCTI: Initializing a Timer Module	11-28
11.6	STATUS RETURNS	11-28
11.6.1	FORTRAN Interface Values	11-31
11.7	PROGRAMMING HINTS	11-31
11.7.1	Checkpointable Tasks	11-31
11.7.2	Numbering Conventions	11-31
11.7.3	Use of CTDI and RDDI for Processing Circular Buffer Entries	11-32
CHAPTER 12	LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER	
12.1	INTRODUCTION	12-1
12.2	GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO	12-2
12.3	QIO MACRO	12-2
12.3.1	Standard QIO Function	12-2
12.3.2	Device-Specific QIO Functions (Immediate)	12-2
12.3.2.1	IO.LED	12-3
12.3.2.2	IO.REL	12-3
12.3.2.3	IO.SDI	12-4
12.3.2.4	IO.SDO	12-4
12.3.3	Device-Specific QIO Functions (Synchronous)	12-4
12.3.3.1	IO.ADS	12-5
12.3.3.2	IO.HIS	12-6
12.3.3.3	IO.MDA	12-7
12.3.3.4	IO.MDI	12-7
12.3.3.5	IO.MDO	12-7
12.3.4	Device-Specific QIO Function (IO.STP)	12-8
12.3.4.1	IO.STP	12-8
12.4	FORTRAN INTERFACE	12-9
12.4.1	The isb Status Array	12-9
12.4.2	Synchronous Subroutines	12-10
12.4.3	FORTRAN Subroutine Summary	12-11
12.4.4	ADC: Reading a Single A/D Channel	12-12
12.4.5	ADJLPS: Adjusting Buffer Pointers	12-13
12.4.6	ASLSLN: Assigning a LUN to LS0:	12-14
12.4.7	CVSWG: Converting a Switch Gain A/D Value to Floating-Point	12-14
12.4.8	DRS: Initiating Synchronous Digital Input Sampling	12-15
12.4.9	HIST: Initiating Histogram Sampling	12-17
12.4.10	IDIR: Reading Digital Input	12-19

	Page	
12.4.11	IDOR: Writing Digital Output	12-19
12.4.12	IRDB: Reading Data from an Input Buffer	12-20
12.4.13	LED: Displaying in LED Lights	12-20
12.4.14	LPSTP: Stopping an In-Progress Synchronous Function	12-21
12.4.15	PUTD: Putting a Data Item into an Output Buffer	12-21
12.4.16	RELAY: Latching an Output Relay	12-22
12.4.17	RTS: Initiating Synchronous A/D Sampling	12-22
12.4.18	SDAC: Initiating Synchronous D/A Output	12-24
12.4.19	SDO: Initiating Synchronous Digital Output	12-26
12.5	STATUS RETURNS	12-27
12.5.1	IE.RSU:	12-30
12.5.2	Second I/O Status Word	12-31
12.5.3	IO.ADS and ADC Errors	12-32
12.5.4	FORTTRAN Interface Values	12-32
12.6	PROGRAMMING HINTS	12-32
12.6.1	The LPS11 Clock and Sampling Rates	12-33
12.6.2	Importance of the I/O Status Block	12-33
12.6.3	Buffer Management	12-34
12.6.4	Use of ADJLPS for Input and Output	12-35
APPENDIX A	SUMMARY OF IO FUNCTIONS	A-1
A.1	ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS	A-2
A.2	CARD READER DRIVER	A-2
A.3	CASSETTE DRIVER	A-2
A.4	COMMUNICATION DRIVERS (MESSAGE-ORIENTED)	A-2
A.5	DECTAPE DRIVER	A-3
A.6	DISK DRIVERS	A-3
A.7	LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER	A-3
A.8	LINE PRINTER DRIVER	A-4
A.9	MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS	A-4
A.10	TERMINAL DRIVER	A-5
A.11	UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER	A-5
APPENDIX B	I/O FUNCTION AND STATUS CODES	B-1
B.1	I/O STATUS CODES	B-1
B.1.1	I/O Status Error Codes	B-1
B.1.2	I/O Status Success Codes	B-3
B.2	DIRECTIVE CODES	B-3
B.2.1	Directive Error Codes	B-3
B.2.2	Directive Success Codes	B-3

		Page
B.3	I/O FUNCTION CODES	B-3
B.3.1	Standard I/O Function Codes	B-4
B.3.2	Specific A/D Converter I/O Function Codes	B-4
B.3.3	Specific Card Reader I/O Function Codes	B-4
B.3.4	Specific Cassette I/O Function Codes	B-4
B.3.5	Specific Communication (Message-Oriented) I/O Function Codes	B-5
B.3.6	Specific DEctape I/O Function Codes	B-5
B.3.7	Specific LPS I/O Function Codes	B-5
B.3.8	Specific Magtape I/O Function Codes	B-6
B.3.9	Specific UDC I/O Function Codes	B-6
APPENDIX C	RSX-11M PROGRAMMING EXAMPLE	C-1
APPENDIX D	GLOSSARY OF RSX-11M TERMS	D-1

FIGURES

Number		Page
1-1	Logical Unit Table	1-5
1-2	QIO Directive Parameter Block	1-13
5-1	Determination of Tape Characteristics for the TM11	5-7
5-2	Determination of Tape Characteristics for the TJU16	5-8
6-1	Structure of Cassette Tape	6-7

TABLES

Number		Page
1-1	Directive Returns	1-29
1-2	I/O Status Returns	1-31
2-1	Standard Terminal Devices	2-1
2-2	Standard Communication Line Interfaces	2-2
2-3	Standard QIO Functions For Terminals	2-5
2-4	Terminal Status Returns	2-6
2-5	Terminal Control Characters	2-9
2-6	Special Terminal Keys	2-10
2-7	Vertical Format Control Characters	2-11
3-1	Standard Disk Devices	3-1
3-2	Standard QIO Functions for Disks	3-4
3-3	Disk Status Returns	3-5
4-1	Standard QIO Functions for DECTape	4-3
4-2	Device-Specific Functions for DECTape	4-4
4-3	DECTape Status Returns	4-5

TABLES

Number		Page
5-1	Standard Magtape Devices	5-1
5-2	Standard QIO Functions for Magtape	5-3
5-3	Device-Specific QIO Functions for Magtape	5-4
5-4	Magtape Status Returns	5-9
6-1	Standard QIO Functions for Cassette	6-3
6-2	Device-Specific QIO Functions for Cassette	6-4
6-3	Cassette Status Returns	6-4
7-1	Standard Line Printer Devices	7-1
7-2	Standard QIO Functions for Line Printers	7-3
7-3	Line Printer Status Returns	7-4
7-4	Vertical Format Control Characters	7-6
8-1	Standard QIO Functions for the Card Reader	8-3
8-2	Device-Specific QIO Function for the Card Reader	8-3
8-3	Card Reader Switches and Indicators	8-5
8-4	Card Reader Status Returns	8-9
8-5	Card Reader Control Characters	8-11
8-6	Translation from DEC026 or DEC029 to ASCII	8-12
9-1	Message-Oriented Communication Interfaces	9-2
9-2	Standard QIO Functions for Communication Interfaces	9-4
9-3	Device-Specific QIO Functions for Communication Interfaces	9-5
9-4	Communication Status Returns	9-7
10-1	Standard Analog-to-Digital Converters	10-1
10-2	Standard QIO Function for the A/D Converters	10-2
10-3	Device-Specific QIO Function for the A/D Converters	10-3
10-4	A/D Conversion Control Word	10-3
10-5	Contents of First Word of isb	10-5

TABLES

Number		Page
10-6	FORTRAN Interface Subroutines for the AFC11 and AD01-D	10-5
10-7	A/D Converter Status Returns	10-8
10-8	FORTRAN Interface Values	10-10
11-1	Standard QIO Function for the UDC11	11-3
11-2	Device-Specific QIO Functions for the UDC11	11-4
11-3	A/D Conversion Control Word	11-5
11-4	Contents of First Word of isb	11-16
11-5	FORTRAN Interface Subroutines for the UDC11	11-17
11-6	UDC11 Status Returns	11-29
11-7	FORTRAN Interface Values	11-31
12-1	Standard QIO Function for the LPS11	12-2
12-2	Device-Specific QIO Functions for the LPS11 (Immediate)	12-3
12-3	Device-Specific QIO Functions for the LPS11 (Synchronous)	12-4
12-4	Device-Specific QIO Function for the LPS11 (IO.STP)	12-8
12-5	Contents of First Word of isb	12-9
12-6	FORTRAN Interface Subroutines for the LPS11	12-11
12-7	LPS11 Status Returns	12-23
12-8	Returns to Second Word of I/O Status Block	12-31
12-9	FORTRAN Interface Values	12-32

PREFACE

0.1 MANUAL OBJECTIVES AND READER CLASS ASSUMPTIONS

This manual is designed to provide all information necessary to interface directly with the I/O device drivers supplied as part of the RSX-11M system. It is intended for use by experienced RSX-11M programmers who want to take advantage of the time and/or space savings which result from direct use of the I/O drivers.

The orientation of this manual is tutorial, but it does not attempt to introduce the reader to all areas of RSX-11M input/output operations. Readers are expected to be familiar with the RSX-11M Executive Reference Manual (DEC-11-OMERA-A-D) and to have some experience with the Task Builder and either FORTRAN IV or MACRO-11 assembly language. Readers should also be familiar with the PDP-11 terminology presented in the PDP-11 Processor Handbook and the PDP-11 Peripherals Handbook. Users of RSX-11M who do not require such detailed knowledge of the I/O drivers can use the device independent services provided by File Control Services (FCS) as documented in the RSX-11 I/O Operations Reference Manual (DEC-11-OMFSA-A-D).

0.2 STRUCTURE OF THE DOCUMENT

This manual has three basic components:

1. Chapter 1 provides an overview of RSX-11M input/output operations. It introduces the reader to the use of logical unit numbers, directive parameter blocks, and macro calls. It describes all of the I/O functions common to a variety of devices, and summarizes standard error and status conditions relating to completion of I/O requests.

2. Chapters 2 through 12 describe the use of all device drivers supported by RSX-11M. These include the following:

Chapter	Device
2	Terminals and terminal communications line interfaces
3	Disks
4	DEctape
5	Magnetic tape
6	Cassette
7	Line printer
8	Card reader
9	Message-oriented communications line interfaces
10	Analog-to-digital converters
11	Universal digital controller
12	Laboratory peripheral system

Each of these chapters is structured in similar fashion and focuses on the following basic elements:

- . Description of the device, including physical information on speed, capacity, access, and usage
- . Summary of standard functions supported by the devices and descriptions of device-specific functions
- . Discussion of special characters, carriage control codes, and functional characteristics, if relevant
- . Summary of error and status conditions returned on acceptance or rejection of I/O requests
- . Description of programming hints for users of the device under RSX-11M

- Appendixes A through D provide quick reference material on I/O functions and status codes, a glossary of RSX-11M terms, and an example of RSX-11M I/O operations. These include the following:

Appendix	Contents
A	Summary of I/O functions by device
B	I/O function and status codes
C	Programming example
D	Glossary of RSX-11M terms

0.3 CONVENTIONS USED IN THIS MANUAL

There are a number of conventions and assumptions used in this manual to present syntax and program coding examples. These are described in the following list.

- Brackets ([]) in syntactic models enclose optional parameters.

The following example illustrates this format:

```
ASTX$$ [err]
```

- Braces ({}) in syntactic models indicate that one of the items must be selected, as in the following:

```
CALL { (DOM)
      (DOMW) } (inm,icont,idata,[idx],[isb],[lun])
```

- An ellipsis (...) in a syntactic model or coding example indicates that parameters have been omitted. As used in this manual, an ellipsis in a QIO macro call indicates omission of standard QIO parameters described in section 1.4. This is illustrated below:

```
QIO$C IO.RLV,...,<stadd,size>
```

- Consecutive commas in a coding example indicate null arguments. The following illustrates this usage:

```
QIO$C IO.ATT,6,,,,AST01
```

- Commas indicating null trailing optional arguments may be omitted, as in the following:

```
QIO$C IO.KIL,9.
```

6. Certain parameters are required but ignored by RSX-11M; this is necessary to maintain compatibility with RSX-11D. For example, in the following, the priority specification (fourth parameter) is ignored:

```
QIO$C IO.WLB,8.,EV,,IOSB,ASTX,<IOBUF,NBUF>
```

7. With the exception of MACRO-11 coding examples, all numbers in the text of this manual are assumed to be decimal; octal radix is explicitly declared as in the following:

An illegal logical block number has been specified for DECTape. The number exceeds 577 (1101 octal).

In MACRO-11 coding examples, all numbers are assumed to be octal; decimal radix is explicitly designated by following the number with a decimal point, as in the following example:

```
QIO$C IO.RDB,14.,.,IOSB,,<IOBUF,80.>
```

8. In FORTRAN subroutine models, parameters which begin with the letters i through n indicate integer variables, as in the following example:

```
CALL DRS (ibuf,ilen,imode,irate,iefn,imask,isb,  
          [nbuf],istart],[istop])
```

In general, where both i and n prefixes are used in a call, the i form indicates the name of an array and the n form specifies the size of the array.

All integer arrays and variables are assumed to occupy one storage word per variable (i.e., INTEGER*2) and all real arrays and variables are assumed to occupy two storage words per variable (i.e., REAL*4).

CHAPTER 1

RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

1.1 OVERVIEW OF RSX-11M I/O

The RSX-11M real-time Executive supports a wide variety of PDP-11 input and output devices, including disks, DECTapes, magnetic tapes, tape cassettes, line printers, card readers, and such laboratory and industrial devices as analog-to-digital converters, universal digital controllers, and laboratory peripheral systems. Drivers for these devices are supplied by Digital Equipment Corporation as part of the RSX-11M system software. This manual describes all of the device drivers supported by RSX-11M and the characteristics, functions, error conditions, and programming hints associated with each. PDP-11 devices not described in this manual can be added to basic RSX-11M configurations, but users must develop and maintain their own drivers for these devices.

Input/output operations under RSX-11M are extremely flexible and are as device- and function-independent as possible. Programs issue I/O requests to logical units which have been previously associated with particular physical device units. Each program or task is able to establish its own correspondence between physical device units and logical unit numbers (LUNs). I/O requests are queued as issued; they are subsequently processed according to the relative priority of the tasks which issued them. I/O requests can be issued from MACRO-11 or FORTRAN tasks by means of the File Control Services (for appropriate devices), or can be interfaced directly to an I/O driver by means of the QIO system directive.

All of the I/O services described in this manual are requested by the user in the form of QIO system directives. A function code included in the QIO directive indicates the particular input or output operation to be performed. I/O functions can be used to request such operations as:

- . attaching or detaching a task's exclusive use of a physical device unit
- . reading or writing a logical or virtual block of data
- . canceling a task's I/O requests

A wide variety of device-specific input/output operations (e.g., reading DECTape in reverse, rewinding cassette tape) can also be specified via QIO directives.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

1.2 RSX-11M DEVICES

The devices listed below are supported by RSX-11M. Drivers are supplied for each of these devices, and I/O operations for them are described in detail in subsequent chapters of this manual.

1. A variety of terminals, including the following:

- . ASR-33 and ASR-35 Teletypes (1)
- . KSR-33 and KSR-35 Teletypes (1)
- . LA30 DECwriters (serial and parallel)
- . LA36 DECwriter
- . VT05B Alphanumeric Display Terminal
- . VT50 Alphanumeric Display Terminal
- . RT02 Data Entry Terminal
- . RT02-C Badge Reader and Data Entry Terminal

These terminals are supported on the following asynchronous line interfaces:

- . DJ11 Asynchronous Communications Line Interface Multiplexer
- . DH11 and DH11-DM11-BB Asynchronous Communications Line Interface Multiplexer
- . DL11-A, DL11-B, DL11-C, and DL11-D Asynchronous Communications Line Interfaces

2. A variety of disks, including the following:

- . RF11/RS11 Fixed-Head Disk

(1) Teletype is a registered trademark of the Teletype Corporation.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

- . RJP04 Pack Disk
 - . RJS03 Fixed-Head Disk
 - . RJS04 Fixed-Head Disk
 - . RK11/RK05 Cartridge Disk
 - . RP11-C/RP03 Pack Disk
3. TC11-G DECTape
 4. Two types of magnetic tape:
 - . TJU16 Magnetic Tape
 - . TM11/TU10 Magnetic Tape
 5. TAl1 Tape Cassette
 6. Three line printers:
 - . LP11 Line Printer
 - . LS11 Line Printer
 - . LV11 Line Printer
 7. CR11 Card Reader
 8. Synchronous and asynchronous line interfaces:
 - . DL11-E Asynchronous Communication Line Interface
 - . DP11 Synchronous Communication Line Interface
 - . DU11 Synchronous Communication Line Interface
 9. Two analog-to-digital converters:
 - . AFC11 Analog-to-Digital Converter
 - . AD01-D Analog-to-Digital Converter
 10. UDC11 Universal Digital Controller
 11. LPS11 Laboratory Peripheral System

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

1.3 LOGICAL UNITS

This section describes the construction of the logical unit table and the use of logical unit numbers.

1.3.1 Logical Unit Number

A logical unit number or LUN is a number which is associated with a physical device unit during RSX-11M I/O operations. For example, LUN 1 might be associated with one of the terminals in the system, LUNs 2, 3, 4, and 5 with DECTape drives, and LUNs 6, 7, and 8 with disk units. The association is a dynamic one; each task running in the system can establish its own correspondence between LUNs and physical device units, and can change any LUN-physical device unit association at any time. The flexibility of this association contributes heavily to RSX-11M device independence.

A logical unit number is simply a short name used to represent a logical unit-physical device unit association. Once the association has been made, the LUN provides a direct and efficient mapping to the physical device unit, and eliminates the necessity to search the device tables whenever the system encounters a reference to a physical device unit.

The user should remember that, although a LUN-physical device unit association can be changed at any time, reassignment of a LUN at run time causes pending I/O requests for the previous LUN assignment to be cancelled. It is the user's responsibility to verify that all outstanding I/O requests for a LUN have been serviced before that LUN is associated with another physical device unit.

1.3.2 Logical Unit Table

There is one logical unit table (LUT) for each task running in an RSX-11M system. This table is a variable-length block contained in the task header. Each LUT contains sufficient 2-word entries for the number of logical units specified by the user at task build time.

Each entry or slot contains a pointer to the physical device unit currently associated with that LUN. Whenever a user issues an I/O request, RSX-11M matches the appropriate physical device unit to the LUN specified in the call by indexing into the logical unit table by the number supplied as the LUN. Thus if the call specifies 6 as the LUN, RSX-11M accesses the sixth 2-word entry in the LUT and associates the I/O request with the physical device unit to which the entry points. The number of LUN assignments valid for a task ranges from zero to 255, but cannot be greater than the number of LUNs specified at task build time.

Figure 1-1 illustrates a typical logical unit table.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

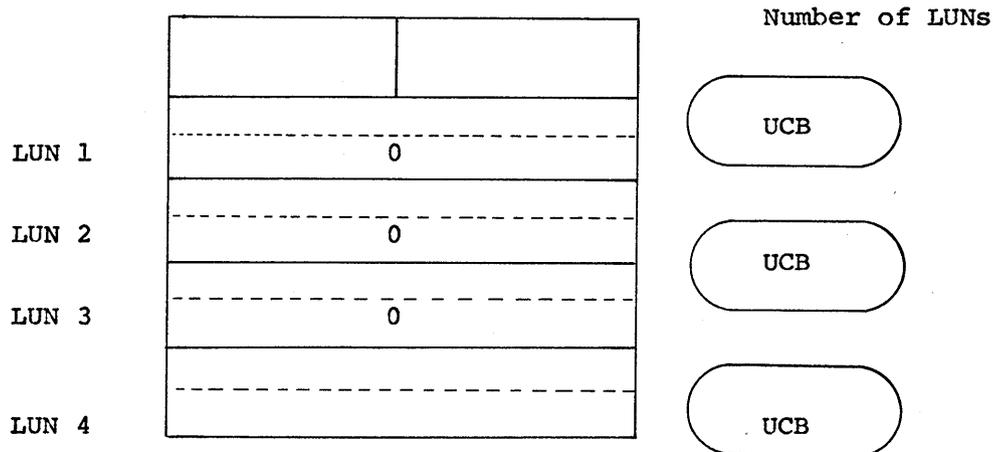


Figure 1-1
Logical Unit Table

Word 1 of each active (assigned) 2-word entry in the logical unit table points to the unit control block (UCB) of the physical device unit with which the LUN is associated. This linkage may be indirect - that is, the user may force redirection of references from one unit to another unit via the MCR command, REDIRECT. Word 2 of each entry is reserved for mountable devices.

1.3.3 Changing LUN Assignments

Logical unit numbers have no significance until they are associated with a physical device unit by means of one of the methods described below:

1. At task build time, the user can specify an ASG keyword option, which associates a physical device unit with a logical unit number referenced in the task being built.
2. The user or system operator can issue a REASSIGN command to MCR; this command reassigns a LUN to another physical device unit and thus changes the LUN-physical device unit correspondence. Note that this reassignment has no effect on the in-core image of a task.
3. At run time, a task can dynamically change a LUN assignment by issuing the ASSIGN LUN system directive, which changes the association of a LUN with a physical device unit during task execution.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

1.4 ISSUING AN I/O REQUEST

User tasks perform I/O in the RSX-11M system by submitting requests for I/O service in the form of QIO system directives. See Chapter 2 of the RSX-11M Executive Reference Manual for a complete description of RSX-11M system directives.

In RSX-11M, as in most multiprogramming systems, tasks do not normally access physical device units directly. Instead, they utilize input/output services provided by the Executive, since it can effectively multiplex the use of physical device units over many users. The RSX-11M Executive routes I/O requests to the appropriate device driver and queues them according to the priority of the requesting task. I/O operations proceed concurrently with other activities in an RSX-11M system.

After an I/O request has been queued, the system does not wait for the operation to complete. If at any time the user task which issued the QIO request cannot proceed until the I/O operation has completed, it should specify an event flag (see sections 1.4.1 and 1.4.2) in the QIO request and should issue a WAITFOR system directive which specifies the same event flag at the point where synchronization must occur. The task then waits for completion of I/O by waiting for the specified event flag to be set.

Each QIO directive must supply sufficient information to identify and queue the I/O request. The user may also want to include parameters to receive error or status codes and to specify the address of an asynchronous system trap service routine. Certain types of I/O operations require the specification of device-dependent information as well. Typical QIO parameters are the following:

- . I/O function to be performed
- . Logical unit number associated with the physical device unit to be accessed
- . Optional event flag number for synchronizing I/O completion processing
- . Optional address of the I/O status block to which information indicating successful or unsuccessful completion is returned
- . Optional address of an asynchronous system trap service routine to be entered on completion of the I/O request
- . Optional device- and function-dependent parameters specifying such items as the starting address of a data buffer, the size of the buffer, and a block number

A set of system macros which facilitate the issuing of QIO directives is supplied with the RSX-11M system. These macros, which reside in the System Macro Library (SY:[1,1]RSXMAC.SML), must be made available to the invoking task by means of the MACRO-11 Assembler directive .MCALL. The function of .MCALL is described in section 1.6.3.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

Several of the first six parameters in the QIO directive are optional, but space for these parameters must be reserved.

During expansion of a QIO macro, a value of zero is defaulted for all null (omitted) parameters. Inclusion of the device- and function-dependent parameters depends on the physical device unit and function specified. If the user wanted to specify only an I/O function code, a LUN, and an address for an asynchronous system trap service routine, the following might be issued:

```
QIO$C IO.ATT,6,,,,ASTOX
```

where IO.ATT is the I/O function code for attach, 6 is the LUN, ASTOX is the AST address, and commas hold places for the event flag number, the request priority, and the address of the I/O status block. No additional device- or function-dependent parameters are required for an attach function. The C form of the QIO\$ macro is used here and in most of the examples included in Chapter 1. Section 1.5 describes the three legal forms of the macro.

For convenience, any comma may be omitted if no parameters appear to the right of it. The command above could therefore be issued as follows, if the asynchronous system trap was not desired.

```
QIO$C IO.ATT,6
```

All extra commas have been dropped. If, however, a parameter appears to the right of any place-holding comma, that comma must be retained.

1.4.1 QIO Macro Format

The arguments for a specific QIO macro call may be different for each I/O device accessed and for each I/O function requested. The general format of the call is, however, common to all devices and is as follows:

```
QIO$C fnc,lun,[efn],[pri],[isb],[ast],[<p1,p2,...,p6>]
```

where brackets ([]) enclose optional or function-dependent parameters. If function-dependent parameters (p1,...,p6) are required, these parameters must be enclosed within angle brackets (<>). The following paragraphs summarize the use of each QIO parameter. Section 1.5 discusses different forms of the QIO\$ macro itself.

The fnc parameter is a symbolic name representing the I/O function to be performed. This name is of the form:

```
IO.xxx
```

where xxx identifies the particular I/O operation. For example, a QIO request to attach the physical device unit associated with a LUN specifies the function code:

```
IO.ATT
```

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

A QIO request to cancel (or kill) all I/O requests for a specified LUN begins in the following way:

```
QIO$C IO.KIL,...
```

The fnc parameter specified in the QIO request is stored internally as a function code in the high-order byte and modifier bits in the low-order byte of a single word. The function code is in the range zero through 31 and is a binary value supplied by the system to match the symbolic name specified in the QIO request. The correspondence between global symbolic names and function codes is defined in the system object module library. Local symbolic definitions may also be obtained via the FILIO\$ and SPCIO\$ macros which reside in the System Macro Library and are summarized in Appendix A. Several similar functions may have identical function codes, and may be distinguished only by their modifier bits. For example, the DECTape read logical forward and read logical reverse functions have the same function code. Only the modifier bits for these two operations are stored differently.

The lun parameter represents the logical unit number (LUN) of the associated physical device unit to be accessed by the I/O request. The association between the physical device unit and the LUN is specific to the task which issues the I/O request, and the LUN reference is usually device-independent. An attach request to the physical device unit associated with LUN 14 begins in the following way:

```
QIO$C IO.ATT,14,....
```

Because each task has its own logical unit table (LUT) in which the physical device unit-LUN correspondences are established, the legality of a lun parameter is specific to the task which includes this parameter in a QIO request. In general, the lun must be in the following range:

$$0 \leq \text{lun} \leq \text{length of task's LUT (if nonzero)}$$

The number of LUNs specified in the logical unit table of a particular task cannot exceed 255.

The efn parameter is a number representing the event flag to be associated with the I/O operation. It may optionally be included in a QIO request. The event flag is cleared when the I/O request is queued and is set when the I/O operation has completed. This allows the task to use the WAITFOR system directive to synchronize I/O programming by suspending execution to wait for an I/O operation to complete and efn to be set; however, if the task continues to execute, it may test the event flag whenever it chooses by using the READ ALL EVENT FLAGS system directive. If the user specifies an event flag number, this number must be in the range 1 through 64. If an event flag specification is not desired, efn can be omitted or can be supplied with a value of zero. Event flags 1 through 32 are local (specific to

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

the issuing task); event flags 33 through 64 are global (shared by all tasks in the system). Flags 25 through 32 and 57 through 64 are reserved for use by system software. Within these bounds, the user can specify event flags as desired to synchronize I/O completion and task execution. Section 1.4.2 provides a more detailed explanation of event flags and significant events.

The optional `pri` parameter is supplied only to make RSX-11M QIO requests compatible with RSX-11D. A specific priority cannot be associated solely with the I/O request specified in the QIO macro call. An RSX-11M I/O request automatically assumes the priority of the requesting task. For consistency with RSX-11D, it is recommended that `pri` be valid, but the user should be aware that RSX-11M does not use this specification in any way. RSX-11D priorities must be in range 1 through 250, and zero can be supplied to indicate the priority of the requesting task. A value of zero or a null specification is recommended for all RSX-11M use.

The optional `isb` parameter identifies the address of the I/O status block (I/O status double-word) associated with the I/O request. This block is a 2-word array in which a code representing the final status of the I/O request is returned on completion of the operation. This code is a binary value that corresponds to a symbolic name of the form `IS.xxx` (for successful returns) or `IE.xxx` (for error returns). The binary error code is returned to the low-order byte of the first word of the status block. It can be tested symbolically, by name. For example, the symbolic status `IE.BAD` is returned if a bad parameter is encountered. The following illustrates the examination of the I/O status block, `IOST`, to determine if a bad parameter has been detected.

```
QIO$C IO.ATT,14.,2,,IOST,...
WTSE$C 2
      .
      .
      .
CMPB  #IE.BAD,IOST
BEQ   ERROR
```

The correspondence between global symbolic names and I/O completion codes is defined in the system object module library. Local symbolic definitions, which are summarized in Appendix B, may also be obtained via the `IOERR$` macro which resides in the System Macro Library.

Certain device-dependent information is returned to the high-order byte of the first word of `isb` on completion of the I/O operation. If a read or write operation is successful, the second word is also significant. For example, in the case of a read function on a terminal, the number of bytes typed before a carriage return is returned in the second word of `isb`. If a Magtape unit is the device and a write function is specified, this number represents the number of bytes actually transferred. The status block can be omitted from a QIO request if the user does not intend to test for successful completion of the request.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

The optional `ast` parameter specifies the address of a service routine to be entered when an asynchronous system trap occurs. Section 1.4.3 discusses the use of asynchronous system traps, and section 2.2.5 of the RSX-11M Executive Reference Manual describes traps in detail. If the user wants to interrupt his task to execute special code on completion of an I/O request, an asynchronous system trap routine can be specified in the QIO request. When the specified I/O operation completes, control branches to this routine at the software priority of the requesting task. The asynchronous code beginning at address `ast` is then executed, much as an interrupt service routine would be. If the user does not want to perform asynchronous processing, the `ast` parameter can be omitted or a value of zero specified in the QIO macro call.

The additional QIO parameters, `<p1,p2,...,p6>`, are dependent on the particular function and device specified in the I/O request. Between zero and six parameters can be included, depending on the particular I/O function. Rules for including these parameters and legal values are described in subsequent chapters of this manual.

1.4.2 Significant Events

"Significant event" is a term used in real-time systems to indicate a change in system status. In RSX-11M, a significant event is declared when an I/O operation completes. This signals the system that a change in status has occurred and indicates that the Executive should review the eligibility of all tasks in the system to determine which task should run next. The use of significant events helps cooperating tasks in a real-time system to communicate with each other and thus allows these tasks to control their own sequence of execution dynamically.

Significant events are normally set by system directives, either directly or indirectly, by completion of a specified function. Event flags associated with tasks may be used to indicate which significant event has occurred. Of the 64 event flags available in RSX-11M, the flags numbered 1 through 32 are local to an individual task and are set or reset only as a result of that task's operation. The event flags numbered 33 through 64 are common to all tasks. Flags 25 through 32 and 57 through 64 are reserved for RSX-11M system software use.

An example of the use of significant events follows. A task issues a QIO directive with an `efn` parameter specified. A `WAITFOR` directive follows the QIO and specifies as an argument the same event flag number. The event flag is cleared when the I/O request is queued by the Executive, and the task is suspended when it executes the `WAITFOR` directive until the event flag is set and a significant event is declared at the completion of the I/O request. The task resumes when the appropriate event flag is set, and execution resumes at the instruction following the `WAITFOR` directive. During the time that the task is suspended, tasks with priorities lower than that of the suspended task have a chance to run, thus increasing throughput in the system.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

1.4.3 System Traps

System traps are used to interrupt task execution and to cause a transfer of control to another memory location for special processing. Traps are handled by the RSX-11M Executive and are relevant only to the task in which they occur. To use a system trap, a task must contain a trap service routine which is automatically entered when the trap occurs.

There are two types of system traps - synchronous and asynchronous. Both are used to handle error or event conditions, but the two traps differ in their relation to the task which is running when they are detected. Synchronous traps signal error conditions within the executing task. If the same instruction sequence were repeated, the same synchronous trap would occur. Asynchronous traps signal the completion of an external event such as an I/O operation. An asynchronous system trap (AST) usually occurs as the result of the initiation or completion of an external event rather than a program condition.

The Executive queues ASTs in a first-in-first-out queue for each task and monitors all asynchronous service routine operations. Because asynchronous traps are the end result of I/O-related activity, they cannot be controlled directly by the task which receives them. However, the task may, under certain circumstances, block honoring an AST to prevent simultaneous access to a critical data region. When access to the critical data region has been completed, the queued ASTs may again be honored. The DSAR\$\$ (DISABLE AST RECOGNITION) and ENAR\$\$ (ENABLE AST RECOGNITION) system directives provide the mechanism for accomplishing this. An example of an asynchronous trap condition is the completion of an I/O request. The timing of such an operation clearly cannot be predicted by the requesting task. If an AST service routine is not specified in an I/O request, a trap does not occur and normal task execution continues.

Asynchronous system traps associated with I/O requests enable the requesting task to be truly event-driven. The AST service routine contained in the initiating task is executed as soon as possible, consistent with the system's priority structure. The use of the AST routine to service I/O related events provides a response time which is considerably better than a polling mechanism, and provides for better overlap processing than the simple QIO and WAITFOR sequence. Asynchronous system traps also provide an ideal mechanism for use in multiple buffering of I/O operations.

All AST's are inserted in a first-in-first-out queue on a per task basis as they occur (i.e., the event which they are to signal has expired). They are effected one at a time whenever the task does not have AST's disabled and is not already in the process of executing an AST service routine. The process of effecting an AST involves storing certain information on the task's stack, including the task's four WAITFOR mask words, the Directive Status Word (DSW), the PS, the PC and any trap dependent parameters. The task's general-purpose registers R0-R5 are not saved and thus it is the responsibility of the AST service routine to save and restore the registers it uses. After

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

an AST is processed, the trap-dependent parameters (if any) must be removed from the task's stack and an AST SERVICE EXIT directive executed. The ASTX\$\$ macro described in section 1.6.6 of this manual is used to issue the AST SERVICE EXIT directive. On AST service exit, control is returned to another queued AST, the executing task, or another task which has been waiting to run. Section 2.2.5 of the RSX-11M Executive Reference Manual describes in detail the purpose of AST service routines and all system directives used to handle them.

1.5 DIRECTIVE PARAMETER BLOCKS

A directive parameter block (DPB) is a fixed-length area of contiguous memory which contains the arguments specified in a system directive macro call. The DPB for a QIO directive has a length of 12 words. It is generated as the result of the expansion of a QIO macro call. The first byte of the DPB contains the directive identification code (DIC) - always 1 for QIO. The second byte contains the size of the directive parameter block in words - always 12 for QIO. During assembly of a user task containing QIO requests, the MACRO-11 Assembler generates a directive parameter block for each I/O request specified in a QIO macro call. At run time, the Executive uses the arguments stored in each DPB to create, for each request, an I/O packet in system dynamic storage. The packet is entered by priority into a queue of I/O requests for the specified physical device unit. This queue is created and maintained by the RSX-11M Executive and is ordered by the priority of the tasks which issued the requests. The I/O drivers examine their respective queues for the I/O request with the highest priority capable of being executed. This request is de-queued (removed from the queue) and the I/O operation is performed. The process is then repeated until the queue is emptied of all requests.

After the I/O request has been completed, the Executive declares a significant event and may set an event flag, cause a branch to an asynchronous system trap service routine, and/or return the I/O status, depending on the arguments specified in the original QIO macro call. Figure 1-2 illustrates the layout of a sample DPB.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

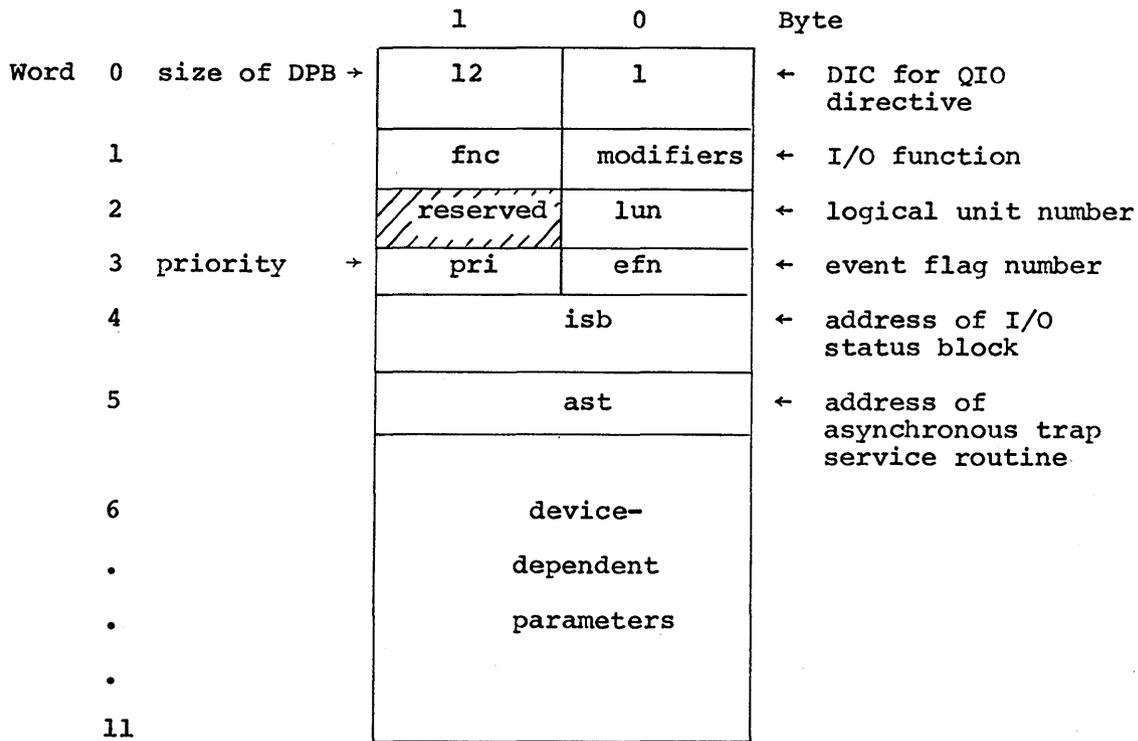


Figure 1-2
QIO Directive Parameter Block

1.6 I/O-RELATED MACROS

There are several system macros supplied with the RSX-11M system which are used to issue and return information about I/O requests. These macros reside in the System Macro Library and must be made available during assembly via the MACRO-11 assembler directive .MCALL.

There are three distinct forms of most of the system directive macros discussed in this section. The following list summarizes the forms of QIO\$, but the characteristics of each form also apply to ALUN\$, GLUN\$, and other system directive macros described below.

1. QIO\$ generates a directive parameter block for the I/O request at assembly time, but does not provide the instructions necessary to execute the request. This form of the request is actually executed using the DIR\$ macro.
2. QIO\$\$ generates a directive parameter block for the I/O request on the stack, and also generates code to execute the request. This is a useful form for reentrant, sharable code since the DPB is generated dynamically at execution time.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

3. QIO\$C generates a directive parameter block for the I/O request at assembly time, and also generates code to execute the request. The DPB is generated in a separate program section called \$DPB\$\$\$. This approach incurs little system overhead and is useful when an I/O request is executed from only one place in the program.

Parameters for both the QIO\$ and QIO\$C forms of the macro must be valid expressions to be used in assembler data-generating directives such as .WORD and .BYTE. Parameters for the QIO\$\$ form must be valid source operand address expressions to be used in assembler instructions such as MOV and MOV.B. The following example references the same parameters in the three distinct forms of the macro call.

```
QIO$      IO.RLB,6,2,,,AST01,...
QIO$C     IO.RLB,6,2,,,AST01,...
QIO$$     #IO.RLB,#6,#2,,,#AST01,...
```

Only the QIO\$\$ form of the macro produces the DPB dynamically. The other two forms generate the DPB at assembly time. The characteristics and use of these different forms are described in greater detail in the RSX-11M Executive Reference Manual.

The following Executive directives and assembler macros are described in this section:

1. QIO\$, which is used to request an I/O operation and supply parameters for that request.
2. DIR\$, which specifies the address of a directive parameter block as its argument, and generates code to execute the directive.
3. .MCALL, which is used to make available from the System Macro Library all macros referenced during task assembly.
4. ALUN\$, which is used to associate a logical unit number with a physical device unit at run time.
5. GLUN\$, which requests that the information about a physical device unit associated with a specified LUN be returned to a user-specified buffer.
6. ASTX\$\$, which is used to terminate execution of an asynchronous system trap (AST) service routine.
7. WTSE\$, which instructs the system to suspend execution of the issuing task until a specified event flag is set.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

1.6.1 The QIO\$ Macro: Issuing an I/O Request

As described in section 1.6, there are three distinct forms of the QIO\$ macro. QIO\$\$ generates a DPB for the I/O request on the stack, and also generates code to execute the request. QIO\$C generates a DPB and code, but the DPB is generated in a separate program section. QIO\$ generates only the DPB for the I/O request. This form of the macro call is used in conjunction with DIR\$ (see section 1.6.2) to execute an I/O request. In the following example, the DIR\$ macro actually generates the code to execute the QIO\$ directive. It provides no QIO parameters of its own, but references the QIO directive parameter block at address QIOREF by supplying this label as an argument.

```
QIOREF: QIO$      IO.RLB,6,2,,,AST01,...      ; CREATE QIO DPB
        .
        .
        .
READ1:  DIR$      #QIOREF                      ; ISSUE I/O REQUEST
        .
        .
        .
READ2:  DIR$      #QIOREF                      ; ISSUE I/O REQUEST
```

1.6.2 The DIR\$ Macro: Executing a Directive

The DIR\$ (execute directive) macro has been implemented to allow a task to reference a previously defined directive parameter block without requiring that it specify all of the parameters of that macro again. It is issued in the form:

```
DIR$ [addr][,err]
```

where: addr is the address of a directive parameter block to be used in the directive. If addr is not included, the DPB itself or the address of the DPB is assumed to already be on the stack.

err is an optional argument which specifies the address of an error routine to which control branches if the directive is rejected. The branch occurs via a JSR PC, err.

1.6.3 The .MCALL Directive: Retrieving System Macros

.MCALL is a MACRO-11 assembler directive which is used to retrieve macros from the System Macro Library (SY:[1,1]RSXMAC.SML) for use during assembly. It must be included in every user task which invokes system macros. .MCALL is usually placed at the beginning of a user task and specifies, as arguments in the call, all system macros which must be made available from the library.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

The following example illustrates the use of this directive:

```
.MCALL QIO$,QIO$$,DIR$,WTSE$$ ; MAKE MACROS AVAILABLE
.
.
QIOREF: QIO$ IO.RLB,6,2,,,AST01, . . .; CREATE ONLY QIO DPB
.
.
READ1: DIR$ #QIOREF ; ISSUE I/O REQUEST
.
.
READ2: QIO$$ #IO.ATT,#14.,#8.,,AST02 ; CREATE DPB ON STACK
; AND ISSUE REQUEST
.
.
```

As many macro references as can fit on a line can be included in a single `.MCALL` directive. There is no limit to the number of `.MCALL` directives that can be specified.

1.6.4 The ALUN\$ Macro: Assigning a LUN

The ASSIGN LUN macro is used to associate a logical unit number with a physical device unit at run time. All three forms of the macro call may be used. ASSIGN LUN does not request I/O for the physical device unit, nor does it attach the unit for exclusive use by the issuing task. It simply establishes a LUN-physical device unit relationship, so that when the task requests I/O for that particular LUN, the associated physical device unit is referenced. The macro is issued from a MACRO-11 program in the following way:

```
ALUN$ lun,dev,unt
```

where: lun is the logical unit number to be associated with the specified physical device unit.

dev is the device name of the physical device.

unt is the unit number of that physical device.

For example, to associate LUN 10 with terminal unit 2, the following macro call could be issued by the task:

```
ALUN$C 10.,TT,2
```

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

A unit number of 0 represents unit 0 for multi-unit devices such as disk, DECTape, or terminals; it indicates the single available unit for devices without multiple units, such as card readers and line printers.

The following list contains device names, listed alphabetically, that may be included as dev parameters for all standard devices supported by RSX-11M.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Device</u>
AD	AD01-D Analog-to-Digital Converter
AF	AFC11 Analog-to-Digital Converter
CR	CR11 Card Reader
CT	TAl1 Tape Cassette
DB	RJP04 Pack Disk
DF	RF11/RS11 Fixed-Head Disk
DK	RK11/RK05 Cartridge Disk
DP	RP11-C/RP03 Pack Disk
DS	RJS03 and RJS04 Fixed-Head Disks
DT	TC11-G DECTape
LP	LP11, LS11, and LV11 Line Printers
LS	LPS11 Laboratory Peripheral System
MM	TJU16 Magnetic Tape
MT	TM11/TU10 Magnetic Tape
TT	Terminals
UD	UDC11 Universal Digital Controller
XL	DL11-E Asynchronous Communication Line Interface
XP	DP11 Synchronous Communication Line Interface
XU	DU11 Synchronous Communication Line Interface

A pseudo-device is a logical device which can normally be redirected by the operator to another physical device unit at any time, without requiring changes in programs which reference the pseudo-device. Dynamic redirection of a physical device unit affects all tasks in the system; reassignment by means of the MCR REASSIGN command affects only one task. The following pseudo-devices are supported by RSX-11M:

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

<u>Code</u>	<u>Device</u>
CL	Console listing, normally the line printer
CO	Console output, normally the main operator's console
TI	Pseudo-input terminal, normally the terminal from which a task was requested
SY	System default device, normally the disk from which the system was bootstrapped

The pseudo-device TI cannot be redirected, since such redirection would have to be handled on a per task rather than a system wide basis (i.e., change the TI device for one task without affecting the TI assignments for other tasks).

The example included below illustrates the use of the three forms of the ALUN\$ macro.

```
;
; DATA DEFINITIONS
;
ASSIGN: ALUN$ 10.,TT,2 ; GENERATE DPB
      .
      .
      .
;
; EXECUTABLE SECTION
;
      DIR$ #ASSIGN ; EXECUTE DIRECTIVE
      .
      .
      .
      ALUN$C 10.,TT,2 ; GENERATE DPB IN SEPARATE PROGRAM
      . ; SECTION, THEN GENERATE CODE TO
      . ; EXECUTE THE DIRECTIVE
      .
      ALUN$$ #10.,#"TT,#2 ; GENERATE DPB ON STACK, THEN
      . ; EXECUTE DIRECTIVE
```

1.6.5 The GLUN\$ Macro: Retrieving LUN Information

The GET LUN INFORMATION macro requests that information about a LUN-physical device unit association be returned in a 6-word buffer specified by the issuing task. All three forms of the macro call may be used. It is issued from a MACRO-11 program in the following way:

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

```
GLUN$  lun,buf
```

where: lun is the logical unit number associated with the physical device unit for which information is requested.

buf is the 6-word buffer to which information is returned.

For example, to request information on the disk unit associated with LUN 8, the following call is issued:

```
GLUN$C  8.,IOBUF
```

The 6-word buffer contains the following indicators on completion of the directive:

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

<u>Word</u>	<u>Byte</u>	<u>Bit</u>	<u>Contents</u>
0			Name of device associated with lun
1	0		Unit number of associated device
	1		Driver flag value, indicating that the driver is resident (always returned as 128 (200 octal) in RSX-11M)
2	0		Unit record-oriented device (e.g., card reader, line printer) (1 = yes)
	1		Carriage-control device (e.g., line printer, terminal) (1 = yes)
	2		Terminal device (1 = yes)
	3		Directory device (e.g., DECTape, disk) (1 = yes)
	4		Single directory device (1 = yes)
	5		Sequential device (1 = yes)
	6-12		Reserved
	13		Device mountable as a communications channel for Digital network support (e.g., DP11, DU11) (1 = yes)
	14		Device mountable as a FILES-11 device (e.g., disk) (1 = yes)
	15		Device mountable (logical OR of bits 13 and 14) (1 = yes)
3			Undefined (included for RSX-11D compatibility)
4			Undefined (included for RSX-11D compatibility)
5			Default buffer size for device (e.g., length of line for terminal)

The example included below illustrates the use of the three forms of the GLUN\$ macro.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

```
;
; DATA DEFINITIONS
;
GETLUN: GLUN$ 6,DSKBUF ; GENERATE DPB
      .
      .
      .
;
; EXECUTABLE SECTION
;
      DIR$ #GETLUN ; EXECUTE DIRECTIVE
      .
      .
      GLUN$C 6,DSKBUF ; GENERATE DPB IN SEPARATE PROGRAM
      . ; SECTION, THEN GENERATE CODE TO
      . ; EXECUTE THE DIRECTIVE
      .
      GLUN$$ #6,#DSKBUF ; GENERATE DPB ON STACK, THEN
      . ; EXECUTE DIRECTIVE
```

1.6.6 The ASTX\$\$ Macro: Terminating AST Service

The AST SERVICE EXIT macro is used to terminate execution of an asynchronous system trap (AST) service routine. Only the ASTX\$\$ form of this macro is provided; ASTX\$ and ASTX\$C are unsupported forms of the macro call. The macro is issued in the following way:

```
ASTX$$ [err]
```

where: err is an optional argument which specifies the address of an error routine to which control branches if the directive is rejected.

On completion of the operation specified in this macro call, if another AST is queued and asynchronous system traps have not been disabled, then the next AST is immediately entered. Otherwise, the task's state before the AST was entered is restored (it is the AST service routine's responsibility to save and restore the registers it uses).

1.6.7 The WTSE\$ Macro: Waiting for an Event Flag

The WAIT FOR SINGLE EVENT FLAG macro instructs the system to suspend execution of the issuing task until the event flag specified in the macro call is set. This macro is extremely useful in synchronizing activity on completion of an I/O operation. All three forms of the macro call may be used. It is issued as follows:

```
WTSE$ efn
```

where: efn is the event flag number

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

WTSE\$ causes the task to be suspended until the specified event flag is set. Frequently, an efn parameter is also included in a QIO\$ macro call, and the event flag is set on completion of the I/O operation specified in that call. The following example illustrates task suspension pending setting of the specified event flag. This example also illustrates the use of the three forms of the macro call.

```
;
; DATA DEFINITIONS
;
WAIT:   WTSE$   5           ; GENERATE DPB
IOSB:   .BLKW   2           ; I/O STATUS BLOCK
      .
      .
      .
;
; EXECUTABLE SECTION
;
      ALUN$$   #14.,#"MM     ; ASSIGN LUN 14 TO MAGTAPE UNIT ZERO
      QIO$C   IO.ATT,14.,5   ; ATTACH DEVICE
      DIR$    #WAIT         ; EXECUTE DIRECTIVE
      WTSE$C  5             ; WAIT FOR EVENT FLAG 5 TO BE SET
      .
      .
      QIO$$   #IO.RLB,#14.,#2,,#IOSB,#ASTX,<#BUF,#80.>
      .
      .
      .
      WTSE$$  #2             ; WAIT FOR EVENT FLAG 2
      .
      .
      .
      QIO$C   IO.WLB,14.,3,,IOSB,AST01,<BUF,80.>
      .
      .
      .
      WTSE$C  3             ; WAIT FOR WRITE TO COMPLETE
      QIO$C   IO.DET,14.    ; DETACH DEVICE
```

1.7 STANDARD I/O FUNCTIONS

There are a large number of input/output operations that can be specified by means of the QIO macro. A particular operation can be requested by including the appropriate function code as the first parameter of a QIO macro call. Certain functions are standard. These functions are almost totally device-independent and can thus be requested for nearly every device described in this manual. Others are device-dependent and are specific to the operation of only one or two I/O devices. This section summarizes the function codes and characteristics of the following device-independent I/O operations:

- . attach to an I/O device
- . detach from an I/O device
- . cancel I/O requests

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

- . read a logical block
- . read a virtual block
- . write a logical block
- . write a virtual block

For certain physical device units discussed in this manual, a standard I/O function may be described as being a NOP. This means that no operation is performed as a result of specifying the function, and an I/O status code of IS.SUC is returned in the I/O status block specified in the QIO macro call.

In the following descriptions and in formats shown in subsequent chapters, the five parameters represented by the ellipsis (...) are as explained in section 1.4.1.

1.7.1 IO.ATT: Attaching to an I/O Device

The function code IO.ATT is specified by a user task when that task requires exclusive use of an I/O device. This function code is included as the first parameter of a QIO macro call in the following way:

```
QIO$C IO.ATT,...
```

Successful completion of an IO.ATT request causes the specified physical device unit to be dedicated for exclusive use by the issuing task. This enables the task to process input or output in an unbroken stream and is especially useful on sequential, non-file-oriented devices such as terminals, card readers, and line printers. An attached physical device unit remains under control of the issuing task until it is explicitly detached by that task. The same LUN must be specified for both the attach and detach functions.

While a physical device unit is attached, the I/O driver for that unit dequeues only I/O requests issued by the task that issued the attach. Thus, a request to attach a device unit already attached by another task will not be processed until the attachment is broken and no higher priority request exists for the unit. A LUN that is associated with an attached physical device unit may not be reassigned by means of an ASSIGN LUN directive.

If the task which issued an attach function exits or is aborted before it issues a corresponding detach, the RSX-11M Executive automatically detaches the physical device unit.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

1.7.2 IO.DET: Detaching from an I/O Device

The function code IO.DET is used to detach a physical device unit which has been previously attached by means of an IO.ATT request for exclusive use of the issuing task. This function code is included as the first parameter of a QIO macro call in the following way:

```
QIO$C IO.DET,...
```

The LUN specifications of both IO.ATT and IO.DET must be the same, as in the following example, which also illustrates the use of "S" forms of several macro calls.

```
.MCALL ALUN$$,QIO$$
ALUN$$ #14.,#"CR      ; ASSOCIATE CARD READER WITH LUN 14
.
.
QIO$$ #IO.ATT,#14.   ; ATTACH CARD READER
.
.
LOOP: QIO$$ #IO.RLB,#14.,... ; READ CARD
.
.
QIO$$ #IO.DET,#14.   ; DETACH CARD READER
```

1.7.3 IO.KIL: Canceling I/O Requests

The function code IO.KIL is issued by a task to cancel all of that task's I/O requests for a particular physical device unit, including all pending and active requests. This results in the status code IE.ABO being returned in the I/O status block and the event flag being set (if specified) for the respective requests, but does not initiate any asynchronous system trap (AST) service routine that may have been specified. Whether the current request is actually cancelled depends on the device. Because file-structured devices (disk and DECTape) operate quickly, IO.KIL is a NOP for these devices and simply causes the return of IS.SUC in the I/O status block.

This function code is included as the first parameter of a QIO macro in the following way:

```
QIO$C IO.KIL,...
```

IO.KIL is useful in such special cases as canceling an I/O request on a physical device unit from which a response is overdue (i.e., a read on a terminal).

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

1.7.4 IO.RLB: Reading a Logical Block

The function code IO.RLB is specified by a task to read a block of data from the physical device unit specified in the macro call. This function code is included as the first parameter of a QIO macro in the following way:

```
QIO$C IO.RLB,....,<stadd,size,pn>
```

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer.

size is the data buffer size in bytes.

pn represents one to four optional parameters, used to specify such additional information as block numbers for certain devices.

1.7.5 IO.RVB: Reading a Virtual Block

The function code IO.RVB is used to read a virtual block of data from the physical device unit specified in the macro call. A "virtual" block indicates a relative block position within a file and is identical to a "logical" block for such sequential devices as terminals and card readers. It is recommended that all tasks use virtual rather than logical reads. However, if a virtual read is issued for a file-structured device (disk or DECTape), the user must ensure that a file is open on the specified physical device unit. This function code is included as the first parameter of a QIO macro call in the following way:

```
QIO$C IO.RVB,....,<stadd,size,pn>
```

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer.

size is the data buffer size in bytes.

pn represents one to four optional parameters, used to specify such additional information as block numbers for certain devices.

1.7.6 IO.WLB: Writing a Logical Block

The function code IO.WLB is specified by a task to write a block of data to the physical device unit specified in the macro call. This function code is included as the first parameter of a QIO macro call in the following way:

```
QIO$C IO.WLB,....,<stadd,size,pn>
```

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

size is the data buffer in bytes.

pn represents one to four optional parameters, used to specify such additional information as block numbers or format control characters for certain devices.

1.7.7 IO.WVB: Writing a Virtual Block

The function code IO.WVB is used to write a virtual block of data to a physical device unit. A "virtual" block indicates a relative block position within a file and is identical to a "logical" block for such sequential devices as terminals and line printers. It is recommended that all tasks use virtual rather than logical writes. However, if a virtual write is issued for a file-structured device (disk or DECTape), the user must ensure that a file is open on the specified physical device unit. This function code is included as the first parameter of a QIO macro call in the following way:

```
QIO$C IO.WVB,...,<stadd,size,pn>
```

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer.

size is the data buffer size in bytes.

pn represents one to four optional parameters, used to specify such additional information as block numbers or format control characters for certain devices.

1.8 I/O COMPLETION

When an I/O request has been completed, either successfully or unsuccessfully, one or more actions may be taken by the Executive. Selection of return conditions depends on the parameters included in the QIO macro call. There are three major returns:

1. A significant event is declared on completion of an I/O operation. If an efn parameter was included in the I/O request, the corresponding event flag is set.
2. If an isb parameter was specified in the QIO macro call, a code identifying the type of success or failure is returned in the low-order byte of the first word of the I/O status block at the location represented by isb.

This status return code is of the form IS.xxx (success) or IE.xxx (error). For example, if the device accessed by the I/O request is not ready, a status code of IE.DNR is returned in isb. The section below (Return Codes) summarizes general codes returned by most of the drivers described in this manual.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

If the `isb` parameter was omitted, the requesting task cannot determine whether the I/O request was successfully completed. A carry clear return from the directive itself simply means that the directive was accepted and the I/O request was queued, not that the actual input/output operation was successfully performed.

3. If an `ast` parameter was specified in the QIO macro call, a branch to the asynchronous system trap (AST) service routine which begins at the location identified by `ast` occurs on completion of the I/O operation. See section 1.4.3 for a detailed description of AST service routines.

1.9 RETURN CODES

There are two kinds of status conditions recognized and handled by RSX-11M when they occur in I/O requests:

- . Directive conditions, which indicate the acceptance or rejection of the QIO directive itself
- . I/O status conditions, which indicate the success or failure of the I/O operation

Directive conditions relevant to I/O operations may indicate any of the following:

- . directive acceptance
- . invalid buffer specification
- . invalid `efn` parameter
- . invalid `lun` parameter
- . invalid DIC number or DPB size
- . unassigned IUN
- . insufficient memory

A code indicating the acceptance or rejection of a directive is returned to the directive status word at symbolic location `$DSW`. This location can be tested to determine the type of directive condition.

I/O conditions indicate the success or failure of the I/O operation specified in the QIO directive. I/O driver errors include such conditions as device not ready, privilege violation, file already open, or write-locked device. If an `isb` parameter is included in the QIO directive, identifying the address of a 2-word I/O status block, an I/O status code is returned in the low-order byte of the first word of this block on completion of the I/O operation. This code is a binary value which corresponds to a symbolic name of the form `IS.xxx`

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

or IE.xxx. The low-order byte of the word can be tested symbolically, by name, to determine the type of status return. The correspondence between global symbolic names and directive and I/O completion status codes is defined in the system object module library. Local symbolic definitions may also be obtained via the DRERR\$ and IOERR\$ macros which reside in the System Macro Library and are summarized in Appendix B.

Binary values of status codes always have the following meaning:

Code	Meaning
Positive (greater than zero)	Successful completion
Zero	Operation still pending
Negative	Unsuccessful completion

A pending operation means that the I/O request is still in the queue of requests for the respective driver, and the driver has not yet serviced the request.

1.9.1 Directive Conditions

Table 1-1 summarizes the directive conditions which may be encountered in QIO directives. The acceptance condition is first, followed by error codes indicating various reasons for rejection, in alphabetical order.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

Table 1-1
Directive Conditions

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Directive accepted The first six parameters of the QIO directive were valid, and sufficient dynamic memory was available to allocate an I/O packet. The directive is accepted.
IE.ADP	Invalid address The I/O status block or the QIO DPB was outside of the issuing task's address space or was not aligned on a word boundary.
IE.IEF	Invalid event flag number The efn specification in a QIO directive was less than zero or greater than 64.
IE.ILU	Invalid logical unit number The lun specification in a QIO directive was invalid for the issuing task. For example, there were only five logical unit numbers associated with the task, and the value specified for lun was greater than five.
IE.SDP	Invalid DIC number or DPB size The directive identification code (DIC) or the size of the directive parameter block (DPB) was incorrect; the legal range for a DIC is from 1 through 127, and all DIC values must be odd. Each individual directive requires a DPB of a certain size. If the size is not correct for the particular directive, this code is returned.
IE.ULN	Unassigned LUN The logical unit number in the QIO directive was not associated with a physical device unit. The user may recover from this error by issuing a valid ASSIGN LUN directive and then reissuing the rejected directive.
IE.UPN	Insufficient dynamic memory There was not enough dynamic memory to allocate an I/O packet for the I/O request. The user can try again later by suspending the task with a WAITFOR SIGNIFICANT EVENT directive. Note that WAITFOR SIGNIFICANT EVENT is the only effective way for the issuing task to suspend execution, since other suspend-type directives that could be used for this purpose themselves require dynamic memory for their execution (e.g., MARK TIME).

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

1.9.2 I/O Status Conditions

The following list summarizes status codes which may be returned in the I/O status block specified in the QIO directive on completion of the I/O request. The I/O status block is a 2-word block with the following format:

- . The low-order byte of the first word receives a status code of the form IS.xxx or IE.xxx on completion of the I/O operation.
- . The high-order byte of the first word is usually device-dependent; in cases where the user might find information in this byte helpful, this manual identifies that information.
- . The second word contains the number of bytes transferred or processed if the operation is successful and involves reading or writing.

If the isb parameter of the QIO directive is omitted, this information is not returned.

The following illustrates a sample 2-word I/O status block on completion of a terminal read operation:

	1	0	Byte
Word 0	0	-10	
1	Number of bytes read		

where -10 is the status code for IE.EOF (end of file). If this code is returned, it indicates that input was terminated by typing CTRL/Z, which is the end-of-file termination sequence on a terminal.

To test for a particular error condition, the user generally compares the low-order byte of the first word of the I/O status block with a symbolic value as in the following:

```
CMPB #IE.DNR,IOSB
```

However, to test for certain types of successful completion of the I/O operation, the entire word value must be compared. For example, if a carriage return terminated a line of input from the terminal, a successful completion code of IS.CR is returned in the I/O status block. If an ESCape or ALTMODE character was the terminator, a code of IS.ESC is returned. To check for either of these codes, the user should first test the low-order byte of the first word of the block for IS.SUC and then test the full word for IS.CR or IS.ESC.

Note that all three of the following comparisons will test equal since the low-order byte in all cases is +1.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

CMPB #IS.CR,IOSB
 CMPB #IS.ESC,IOSB
 CMPB #IS.SUC,IOSB

In the case of a successful completion where the carriage return is the terminal indicator (IS.CR), the following illustrates the status block:

	1	0	Byte
Word 0	15	+1	
1	Number of bytes read		

where 15 is the octal code for carriage return and +1 is the status code for successful completion.

The codes described in Table 1-2 are general status codes which apply to the majority of devices presented in subsequent chapters. Error codes specific to only one or two drivers are described only in relation to the devices for which they are returned. The list below describes successful and pending codes first, then error codes in alphabetical order.

Table 1-2
 I/O Status Conditions

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Successful completion The I/O operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of bytes processed, if the operation involved reading or writing.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The I/O operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

Table 1-2 (Cont.)
I/O Status Conditions

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.ABO	Operation aborted The specified I/O operation was cancelled via IO.KIL while in progress or while still in the I/O queue.
IE.ALN	File already open The task attempted to open a file on the physical device unit associated with the specified LUN, but a file has already been opened by the issuing task on that LUN.
IE.BAD	Bad parameter An illegal specification was supplied for one or more of the device-dependent QIO parameters (words 6-11). For example, a bad channel number or gain code was specified in an analog-to-digital converter I/O operation.
IE.BLK	Illegal block number An illegal block number was specified for a file-structured physical device unit. This code is returned, for example, if block 4800 is specified for an RK05 disk, on which legal block numbers extend from zero through 4799.
IE.BYT	Byte-aligned buffer specified. Byte alignment was specified for a buffer, but only word alignment is legal for the physical device unit. For example, a disk function requiring word alignment was requested, but the buffer was aligned on a byte boundary. Alternately, the length of a buffer was not an appropriate multiple of bytes. For example, all RP03 disk transfers must be an even multiple of four bytes.
IE.DAA	Device already attached The physical device unit specified in an IO.ATT function was already attached to the issuing task. This code indicates that the issuing task has already attached the desired physical device unit, not that the unit was attached by another task.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

Table 1-2 (Cont.)
I/O Status Conditions

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.DNA	Device not attached The physical device unit specified in an IO.DET function was not attached to the issuing task. This code has no bearing on the attachment status with respect to other tasks.
IE.DNR	Device not ready The physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not ready to perform the desired I/O operation. This code is often returned as the result of an interrupt timeout, that is, a "reasonable" amount of time has passed, and the physical device unit has not responded.
IE.EOF	End-of-file encountered An end-of-file mark, record, or control character was recognized on the input device.
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was specified in an I/O request that was illegal for the specified physical device unit. This code is returned if the task attempts to execute an illegal function or if, for example, a read function is requested on an output-only device, such as the line printer.
IE.NLN	File not open The task attempted to close a file on the physical device unit associated with the specified LUN, but no file was currently open on that LUN.
IE.NOD	Insufficient buffer space Dynamic storage space has been depleted, and there was insufficient buffer space available to allocate a secondary control block. For example, if a task attempts to open a file, buffer space for the window and file control block must be supplied by the Executive. This code is returned when there is not enough space for such an operation.

CHAPTER 1. RSX-11M INPUT/OUTPUT

Table 1-2 (Cont.)
I/O Status Conditions

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.OVR	Illegal read overlay request A read overlay was requested and the physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not the physical device unit from which the task was installed. The read overlay function can only be executed on the physical device unit from which the task image containing the overlays was installed.
IE.PRI	Privilege violation The task which issued a request was not privileged to execute that request. For example, for the UDC11 and LPS11, a checkpointable task attempted to connect to interrupts or to execute a synchronous sampling function.
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The buffer requested for a read or write request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately a byte count of zero was specified.
IE.VER	Unrecoverable error After the system's standard number of retries have been attempted upon encountering an error, the operation still could not be completed. This code is returned in the case of parity, CRC, or similar errors.
IE.WLK	Write-locked device The task attempted to write on a write-locked physical device unit.

CHAPTER 2
TERMINAL DRIVER

2.1 INTRODUCTION

The terminal driver provides support for a variety of terminal devices under RSX-11M. Table 2-1 summarizes the terminals supported, and subsequent sections describe these devices in greater detail.

Table 2-1
Standard Terminal Devices

<u>Model</u>	<u>Column Width</u>	<u>Character Set</u>	<u>Baud Range</u>
ASR-33/35	72	64	110
KSR-33/35	72	64	110
LA30-P	80	64	300
LA30-S	80	64	110-300
LA36	80-132	64-96*	110-300
RT02	64	64	110-1200
RT02-C	64	64	110-1200
VT05B	72	64	110-2400
VT50	72	64	110-300

* The LA36 transmits a set of 64 characters, but can print a set of 96.

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

Where appropriate terminals must be strapped to transmit only upper-case alphabetic characters. Input lines can be at most 80 bytes, and longer input lines are truncated. The terminal driver supports the communication line interfaces summarized in Table 2-2. These interfaces are described in greater detail in section 2.7. Programming is identical for all.

Table 2-2
Standard Communication Line Interfaces

<u>Model</u>	<u>Type</u>
DH11	16-line multiplexer or
DH11-DM11-BB	16-line multiplexer with modem control
DJ11	16-line multiplexer
DL11-A/B/C/D	Single-line interfaces

2.1.1 ASR-33/35 Teletypes

The ASR-33 and ASR-35 Teletypes are asynchronous hard-copy terminals. No paper tape reader or punch capability is supported.

2.1.2 KSR-33/35 Teletypes

The KSR-33 and KSR-35 Teletypes are asynchronous, hard-copy terminals.

2.1.3 LA30 DECwriters

The LA30 DECwriter is an asynchronous, hard-copy terminal that is capable of producing an original and one copy. It is particularly appropriate for systems requiring large numbers of printer-terminals. The LA30-P is a parallel model and the LA30-S is a serial model.

2.1.4 LA36 DECwriter

The LA36 DECwriter is a high-speed asynchronous terminal which produces hard copy and operates in serial mode. It has an impact printer capable of generating multipart and special preprinted forms. Both upper-case and lower-case characters can be printed.

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

2.1.5 RT02 Alphanumeric Display Terminal and RT02-C Badge Reader/Alphanumeric Display Terminal

The RT02 is a compact alphanumeric display terminal designed for applications in which source data is primarily numeric. A shift key permits the entry of 30 discrete characters, including upper-case alphabetic characters. The RT02 can, however, receive and display 64 characters.

The RT02-C model also contains a badge reader. This feature provides a reliable method of identifying and controlling access to the PDP-11 or to a secure facility. Furthermore, data in a format corresponding to that of a badge (22-column fixed data) can be entered very quickly.

2.1.6 VT05B Alphanumeric Display Terminal

The VT05B is an alphanumeric display terminal that consists of a CRT display and a self-contained keyboard. From a programming point of view, it is equivalent to other terminals, except that the VT05B offers direct cursor addressing.

2.1.7 VT50 Alphanumeric Display Terminal

The VT50 is an alphanumeric display terminal that consists of a CRT display and a keyboard. It is similar to the VT05B in capacity and operation, but is restricted under RSX-11M to a lower maximum baud rate and does not offer direct cursor addressing.

2.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

Word 2 of the buffer filled by the GET LUN INFORMATION system directive (the first characteristics word) contains the following information for terminals. A setting of 1 indicates that the described characteristic is true for terminals.

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Setting</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
0	1	Record-oriented device
1	1	Carriage-control device
2	1	Terminal device
3	0	Directory device
4	0	Single-directory device
5	0	Sequential device
6-12	0	Reserved
13	0	Device mountable as a communications channel
14	0	Device mountable as a FILES-11 volume
15	0	Device mountable

Words 3 and 4 are undefined; word 5 indicates the default buffer size for the device, for terminals the width of the terminal carriage or display screen.

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

2.3 QIO MACRO

Table 2-3 lists the standard functions of the QIO macro that are valid for terminals.

Table 2-3
Standard QIO Functions for Terminals

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.ATT,...	Attach device
QIO\$C IO.DET,...	Detach device
QIO\$C IO.KIL,...	Cancel I/O requests
QIO\$C IO.RLB,...,<stadd,size>	Read logical block (Read typed input into buffer)
QIO\$C IO.RVB,...,<stadd,size>	Read virtual block (Read typed input into buffer)
QIO\$C IO.WLB,...,<stadd,size,vfc>	Write logical block (Print buffer contents)
QIO\$C IO.WVB,...,<stadd,size,vfc>	Write virtual block (Print buffer contents)

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (may be on a byte boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be greater than zero).

vfc is a vertical format control character from Table 2-7.

The effect of IO.KIL on an in progress request depends upon whether the request is for input or output. If it is for input (i.e., IO.RLB or IO.RVB), the request is forced to terminate. IE.ABO is returned, and the second word of the I/O status block contains the number of bytes already typed. If the request is for output (i.e., IO.WLB or IO.WVB), the transfer is terminated, and IS.SUC is returned.

The terminal driver supports no device-specific functions.

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

2.4 STATUS RETURNS

Table 2-4 lists error and status conditions that are returned by the terminal driver described in this chapter.

Table 2-4
Terminal Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.EOF	Successful completion on a read with End-of-file The line of input read from the terminal was terminated with the end-of-file character CTRL/Z.
IS.SUC	Successful completion The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of bytes processed, if the operation involved reading or writing.
IS.CR	Successful completion on a read The line of input read from the terminal was terminated by a carriage return.
IS.ESC	Successful completion on a read The line of input read from the terminal was terminated by an ESCape or ALTMODE character.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.
IE.ABO	Operation aborted The specified I/O operation was cancelled via IO.KIL while in progress or while in the I/O queue.
IE.DAA	Device already attached. The physical device unit specified in an IO.ATT function was already attached by the issuing task. This code indicates that the issuing task has already attached the desired physical device unit, not that the unit was attached by another task.

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

Table 2-4 (Cont.)
Terminal Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.DNA	Device not attached The physical device unit specified in an IO.DET function was not attached by the issuing task. This code has no bearing on the attachment status of other tasks.
IE.DNR	Device not ready The physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not ready to perform the desired I/O operation. This code is returned to indicate one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none">. A timeout occurred on the physical device unit (i.e., an interrupt was lost).. An attempt was made to perform a transfer on a remote DH11 line without carrier present.
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was specified in an I/O request that was illegal for terminals.
IE.NOD	Buffer allocation failure Dynamic storage has been depleted, and there was insufficient space available to allocate a buffer for an input request (i.e., all input is buffered in the terminal driver).
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The buffer specified for a read or write request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately, a byte count of zero was specified.

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

The following illustrates the contents of the I/O status block on return of an IS.ESC code:

	1	0	Byte
Word 0	33	+1	
1	Number of bytes read		

where 33 is the octal representation of the ESCape or ALTMODE character, and +1 is the status code for successful completion (IS.SUC). The contents of this block on return of IS.CR are the same, except that the high-order byte of word 0 contains 15, the octal code for carriage return. Unlike other RSX-11M return codes, IS.CR and IS.ESC are word values, rather than byte values. The low-order byte simply indicates successful completion, and the high-order byte is required to show the specific type. To test for an IS.ESC or IS.CR code, the user can first test the low-order byte of the first word of the I/O status block for IS.SUC, and then test the full word for IS.ESC or IS.CR.

2.5 CONTROL CHARACTERS AND SPECIAL KEYS

This section describes the particular meaning of special terminal control characters and keys for RSX-11M.

2.5.1 Control Characters

A control character is input from a terminal by holding the control key (CTRL) down while typing one other key. Two of the control characters described in Table 2-5, CTRL/U and CTRL/Z, are echoed on the terminal printer as ↑U and ↑Z respectively. Other control characters are recognized by the terminal driver but are not printing characters and are therefore not echoed.

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

Table 2-5
Terminal Control Characters

<u>Character</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
CTRL/C	Typing CTRL/C on the terminal causes unsolicited input on that terminal to be earmarked for the Monitor Console Routine (MCR). When the unsolicited input completes, it is passed to the MCR dispatcher. "MCR>" is echoed when the terminal is ready to accept the unsolicited input.
CTRL/I	Typing CTRL/I initiates a horizontal tab, and the terminal spaces to the next tab stop. Tabs are set at every eighth character position.
CTRL/J	Typing CTRL/J is equivalent to typing the LINE FEED key on the terminal.
CTRL/K	Typing CTRL/K initiates a vertical tab, and the terminal performs four line feeds.
CTRL/L	Typing CTRL/L initiates a form feed, and the terminal performs eight line feeds. Paging is not performed.
CTRL/M	Typing CTRL/M is equivalent to typing the carriage RETURN key on the terminal (See section 2.5.2).
CTRL/O	Typing CTRL/O suppresses output being sent to a terminal by the current I/O request. For attached terminals, CTRL/O remains in effect, and output continues to be suppressed until any of the following occur: <ul style="list-style-type: none">. The terminal is detached. Solicited input is entered. Unsolicited input is entered. Another CTRL/O character is typed For unattached terminals, CTRL/O suppresses output for only the current output buffer.
CTRL/U	Typing CTRL/U before typing a line terminator causes previously typed characters to be deleted back to the beginning of the line. The system echoes this character as ↑U, followed by a carriage return and a line feed. This allows the line to be retyped.
CTRL/Z	Typing CTRL/Z indicates an end-of-file for the current terminal input. It signals MAC, PIP, TKB, and other system tasks that terminal input is complete and the task should exit. The system echoes this character as ↑Z followed by a carriage return and a line feed.

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

2.5.2 Special Keys

The ESCape, carriage RETURN, and RUBOUT keys have special significance for terminal input, as described in Table 2-6. A line can be terminated by an ESCape (or ALTMODE) character, by a carriage RETURN, by CTRL/Z, or by completely filling the input buffer (i.e., exhausting the byte count before a line terminator is typed). The standard buffer size for a terminal can be determined by issuing a GET LUN INFORMATION system directive and examining word 5 of the information buffer.

Table 2-6
Special Terminal Keys

<u>Key</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
ESC	Typing ESCape or ALTMODE signals the terminal driver that there is no further input on the current line. This line terminator allows further input on the same line since the carriage or cursor is not returned to the first column position.
RETURN	Typing RETURN terminates the current line and causes the carriage or cursor to return to the first column on the line.
RUBOUT	Typing RUBOUT deletes the last character typed on an input line. Only characters typed since the last line terminator may be deleted. Several characters can be deleted in sequence by typing successive RUBOUTs. The first RUBOUT echoes as a backslash (\), followed by the character which has been deleted. Subsequent RUBOUTs cause only the deleted character to be echoed. The next character typed which is not a RUBOUT causes another \ followed by the new character to be echoed. The following example illustrates rubbing out ABC and then typing CBA:

ABC\CBA\CBA

The second backslash is not displayed if a line terminator is typed after rubbing out the characters on a line, as in the following:

ABC\CBA

2.6 VERTICAL FORMAT CONTROL

Table 2-7 below summarizes the meanings of all characters used for vertical format control on the terminal. Any one of these characters can be specified as the value of the vfc parameter in an IO.WLB or IO.WVB function.

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

Table 2-7
Vertical Format Control Characters

<u>Octal Value</u>	<u>Character</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
040	blank	SINGLE SPACE - Output a line feed, print the contents of the buffer, and output a carriage return. Normally, printing immediately follows the previously printed line.
060	zero	DOUBLE SPACE - Output two line feeds, print the contents of the buffer, and output a carriage return. Normally, the buffer contents are printed two lines below the previously printed line.
061	one	PAGE EJECT - Output eight line feeds, print the contents of the buffer, and output a carriage return.
053	plus	OVERPRINT - Print the contents of the buffer and output a carriage return, normally overprinting the previous line.
044	dollar sign	PROMPTING OUTPUT - Output a line feed and print the contents of the buffer. This mode of output is intended for use with a terminal where a prompting message is output and input is then read on the same line.
000	null	INTERNAL VERTICAL FORMAT - The buffer contents are printed without addition of vertical format control characters. In this mode, more than one line of guaranteed contiguous output can be printed per I/O request.

All other vertical format control characters are interpreted as blanks (octal 040).

2.7 TERMINAL INTERFACES

This section summarizes the characteristics of the three types of standard communication line interfaces supported by RSX-11M.

2.7.1 DH11 Asynchronous Serial Line Multiplexer

The DH11 multiplexer interfaces up to 16 asynchronous serial communications lines for terminal use. As many as 16 DH11s can be interfaced to the PDP-11, and the total capacity is therefore 256

CHAPTER 2. TERMINAL DRIVER

lines. The DH11 supports programmable baud rates with no parity. The DM11-BB option may be included to provide modem control for dial-up lines. These lines must be interfaced via Bell 103 or equivalent modems.

2.7.2 DJ11 Asynchronous Serial Line Multiplexer

The DJ11 multiplexer interfaces as many as 16 asynchronous serial lines to the PDP-11 for local terminal communications. As many as 16 DJ11s can be interfaced to the PDP-11, and the total capacity is therefore 256 lines. The DJ11 does not provide a dial-up capability but supports jumper selectable baud rates.

2.7.3 DL11 Asynchronous Serial Line Interface

The DL11 supports a single asynchronous serial line and handles full-duplex communication between the PDP-11 and a terminal. There are 13 standard baud rates available to DL11 users (40-9600 baud). Four versions of the DL11 interface are supported by RSX-11M for terminal use: DL11-A, DL11-B, DL11-C, and DL11-D. The DL11-E is supported only for message-oriented communications and is described in Chapter 9. A total of 16 DL11 interfaces can be supported on a single system for terminal use.

2.8 PROGRAMMING HINTS

This section contains information on important considerations relevant to users of the terminal driver described in this chapter.

2.8.1 Terminal Line Truncation

If the number of characters to be printed exceeds the line length of the physical device unit, the terminal driver discards the excess characters. The user can determine that this will happen by examining word 5 of the information buffer returned by the GET LUN INFORMATION system directive.

2.8.2 ESCAPE Code Conversion

An ESCAPE or ALTMODE character code of 33, 175, or 176 is converted internally to 33 before it is returned to the user on input.

2.8.3 RT02-C Control Function

When sending a control character (e.g., vertical tab) to the RT02-C Badge Reader and Data Entry Terminal, the high-order bit (bit 7) of the byte must be set to one. This causes the terminal driver not to recognize the character. In the case of a vertical tab, 213 octal must be output rather than 13 octal.

CHAPTER 3

DISK DRIVERS

3.1 INTRODUCTION

The RSX-11M disk drivers support the disks summarized in Table 3-1. Subsequent sections describe these devices in greater detail.

Table 3-1
Standard Disk Devices

<u>MODEL</u>	<u>RPM</u>	<u>SURFACES</u>	<u>CYLINDERS</u>	<u>WORDS/ TRACK</u>	<u>WORDS/ DRIVE</u>
RF11/RS11	1800	1	128	2048.	262,144.
RJP04	3600	19	411	5632.	43,980,288.
RJS03	3600	1	64	4096.	262,144.
RJS04	3600	1	64	8192.	524,288.
RK11/RK05	1500	2	200	3072.	1,228,800.
RP11C/RP03	2400	20	400	2560.	20,480,000.

All of the disks described in this chapter are accessed in essentially the same manner. Up to eight disks of each type may be connected to their respective controllers. Disks and other file-structured media under RSX-11M are divided logically into a series of 256-word blocks.

3.1.1 RF11/RS11 Fixed-Head Disk

The RF11 controller/RS11 fixed-head disk provides random-access bulk storage. It features fast track-switching time and a redundant set of timing tracks. The RF11/RS11 is unique because the hardware can automatically perform a spiral read across disk platters.

3.1.2 RJP04 Pack Disk

The RJP04 (RH11 controller/RP04 pack disk) pack disk consists of 19 data surfaces and a moving read/write head. It is similar to the RP11-C/RP03, but has twice the capacity. The RJP04 offers large capacity storage with rapid access time.

3.1.3 RJS03 Fixed-Head Disk

The RJS03 (RH11 controller/RS03 fixed-head disk) is a fixed head disk which offers speed and efficiency. With 64 tracks per cylinder, the RJS03 has a capacity of 262,144 words.

3.1.4 RJS04 Fixed-Head Disk

The RJS04 (RH11 controller/RS04 fixed-head disk) is similar to the RJS03 disk, and interfaces to the same controller but provides twice the number of words per track and twice the capacity.

3.1.5 RK11/RK05 Cartridge Disk

The RK11 controller/RK05 DECpack cartridge disk is an economical storage system for medium-volume, random-access storage. The removable disk cartridge offers the flexibility of large off-line capacity with rapid transfers of files between on- and off-line units without necessitating copying operations.

3.1.6 RP11-C/RP03 Pack Disk

The RP11-C controller/RP03 pack disk consists of 20 data surfaces and a moving read/write head. Only an even number of words can be transferred in an RP03 read/write operation.

CHAPTER 3. DISK DRIVERS

3.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

Word 2 of the buffer filled by the GET LUN INFORMATION system directive (the first characteristics word) contains the following information for disks. A bit setting of 1 indicates that the described characteristic is true for disks.

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Setting</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
0	0	Record-oriented device
1	0	Carriage-control device
2	0	Terminal device
3	1	Directory device
4	0	Single-directory device
5	0	Sequential device
6-12	0	Reserved
13	0	Device mountable as a communications channel
14	1	Device mountable as a FILES-11 volume
15	1	Device mountable

Words 3 and 4 of the buffer are undefined; word 5 indicates the default buffer size, which is 512 for all disks.

3.3 QIO MACRO

Table 3-2 lists the standard functions of the QIO macro that are valid for disks.

CHAPTER 3. DISK DRIVERS

Table 3-2
Standard QIO Functions for Disks

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.ATT,...	Not applicable (NOP)
QIO\$C IO.DET,...	Not applicable (NOP)
QIO\$C IO.KIL,...	Not applicable (NOP)
QIO\$C IO.RLB,....,<stadd,size,,blkh,blk1>	Read logical block
QIO\$C IO.RVB,....,<stadd,size,,blkh,blk1>	Read virtual block
QIO\$C IO.WLB,....,<stadd,size,,blkh,blk1>	Write logical block
QIO\$C IO.WVB,....,<stadd,size,,blkh,blk1>	Write virtual block

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (must be on a word boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be even, greater than zero, and, for the RP03, also a multiple of four bytes).

blkh/blk1 are block high and block low, combining to form a double-precision number that indicates the logical/virtual block address on the disk where the transfer starts; blkh represents the high eight bits of the address, and blk1 the low 16 bits.

IO.RVB and IO.WVB are associated with file operations (see the RSX-11 I/O Operations Reference Manual). For these functions to be executed, a file must be open on the specified LUN.

The disk drivers support no device-specific functions.

3.4 STATUS RETURNS

The error and status conditions listed in Table 3-3 are returned by the disk drivers described in this chapter.

CHAPTER 3. DISK DRIVERS

Table 3-3
Disk Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Successful completion The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of bytes processed, if the operation involved reading or writing.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.
IE.ALN	File already open The task attempted to open a file on the physical device unit associated with specified LUN, but a file has already been opened by the issuing task on that LUN.
IE.BLK	Illegal block number An illegal logical block number was specified. This code would be returned, for example, if block 4800 were specified for an RK05 disk, on which legal block numbers extend from zero through 4799.
IE.BYT	Byte-aligned buffer specified Byte alignment was specified for a buffer, but only word alignment is legal for disk. Alternately, the length of a buffer is not an appropriate number of bytes. For example, all RP03 disk transfer must be a multiple of four bytes.
IE.DNR	Device not ready The physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not ready to perform the desired I/O operation. IE.IFC Illegal function A function code was specified in an I/O request that is illegal for disks.

CHAPTER 3. DISK DRIVERS

Table 3-3 (Cont.)
Disk Status Returns

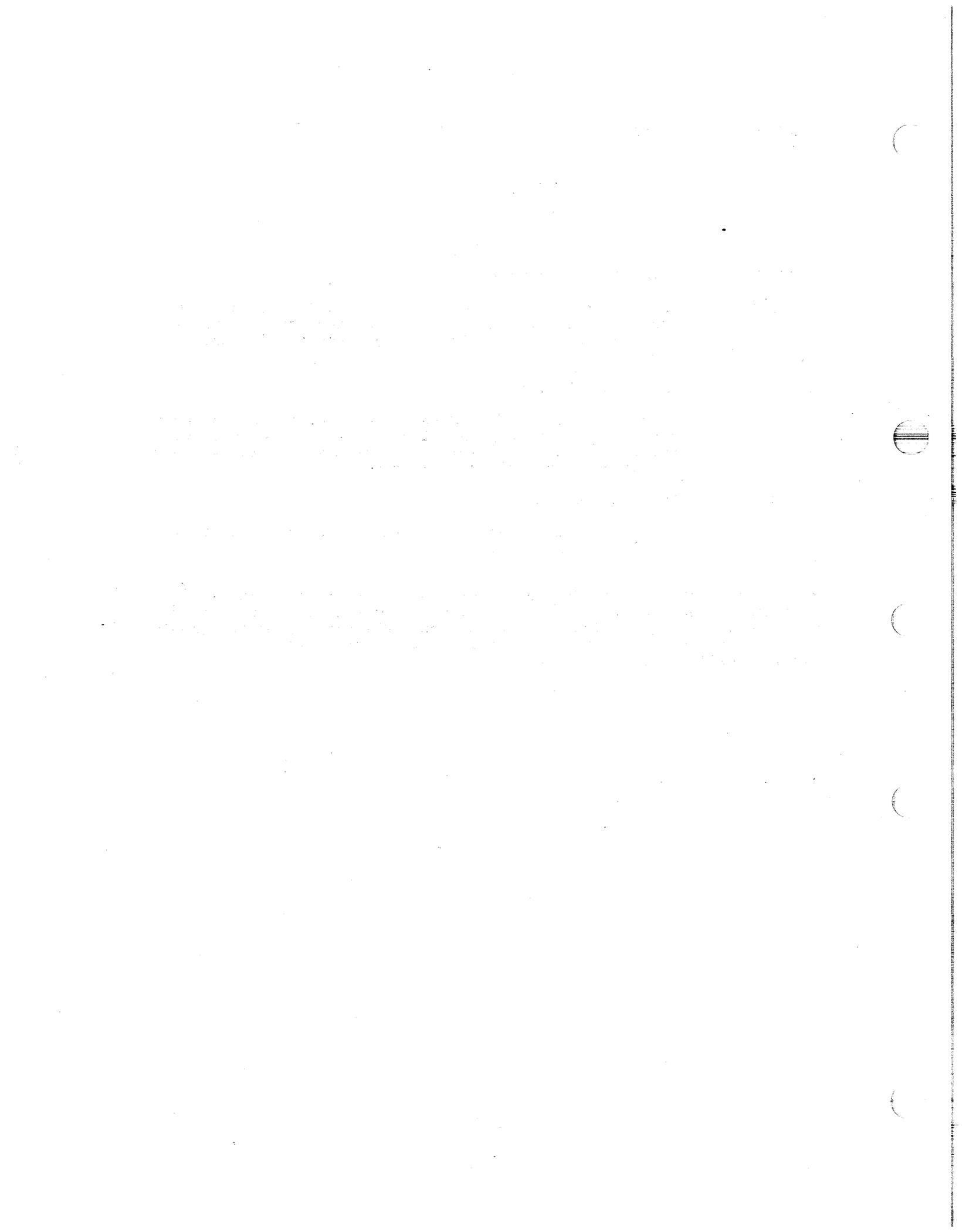
<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.NLN	File not open The task attempted to close a file on the physical device unit associated with the specified LUN, but no file was currently open on that LUN.
IE.NOD	Insufficient buffer space Dynamic storage space has been depleted, and there was insufficient buffer space available to allocate a secondary control block. For example, if a task attempts to open a file, buffer space for the window and file control block must be supplied by the Executive. This code is returned when there is not enough space for this operation.
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.OVR	Illegal read overlay request A read overlay was requested, and the physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not the physical device unit from which the task was installed. The read overlay function can only be executed on the physical device unit from which the task image containing the overlays was installed.
IE.PRI	Privilege violation The task which issued the request was not privileged to execute that request. For disk, this code is returned if a nonprivileged task attempts to read or write a mounted volume directly (i.e., IO.RLB or IO.WLB).

CHAPTER 3. DISK DRIVERS

Table 3-3 (Cont.)
Disk Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The buffer specified for a read or write request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately, a byte count of zero was specified.
IE.VER	Unrecoverable error After the system's standard number of retries has been attempted upon encountering an error, the operation still could not be completed. For disk, unrecoverable errors are usually parity errors.
IE.WLK	Write-locked device The task attempted to write on a disk that was physically write-locked.

When a disk I/O error condition is detected, an error is usually not returned immediately. Instead, RSX-11M attempts to recover from most errors by retrying the function as many as eight times. Unrecoverable errors are generally parity, timing, or other errors caused by a hardware malfunction.



CHAPTER 4

DECTAPE DRIVER

4.1 INTRODUCTION

The RSX-11M DECTape driver supports the TC11-G dual DECTape controller with up to three additional dual DECTape transports. The TC11-G is a dual-unit, bidirectional, magnetic-tape transport system for auxiliary data storage. DECTape is formatted to store data at fixed positions on the tape, rather than at unknown or variable positions as on conventional magnetic tape. The system uses redundant recording of the mark, timing, and data tracks to increase reliability. Each reel contains 578 logical blocks. As with disk, each of these blocks can be accessed separately, and each contains 256 words.

4.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

Word 2 of the buffer filled by the GET LUN INFORMATION system directive (the first characteristics word) contains the following information for DECTapes. A bit setting of 1 indicates that the described characteristic is true for DECTapes.

CHAPTER 4. DECTAPE DRIVER

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Setting</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
0	0	Record-oriented device
1	0	Carriage-control device
2	0	Terminal device
3	1	Directory device
4	0	Single-directory device
5	0	Sequential device
6-12	0	Reserved
13	0	Device mountable as a communications channel
14	1	Device mountable as a FILES-11 volume
15	1	Device mountable

Words 3 and 4 of the buffer are undefined; word 5 indicates the default buffer size, for DECTape 512 bytes.

4.3 QIO MACRO

This section summarizes standard and device-specific QIO functions for the DECTape driver.

4.3.1 Standard QIO Functions

Table 4-1 lists the standard functions of the QIO macro that are valid for DECTape.

CHAPTER 4. DECTAPE DRIVER

Table 4-1
Standard QIO Functions for DECTape

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.ATT,...	Not applicable (NOP)
QIO\$C IO.DET,...	Not applicable (NOP)
QIO\$C IO.KIL,...	Not applicable (NOP)
QIO\$C IO.RLB,....,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Read logical block (forward)
QIO\$C IO.RVB,....,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Read virtual block (forward)
QIO\$C IO.WLB,....,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Write logical block (forward)
QIO\$C IO.WVB,....,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Write virtual block (forward)

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (must be on a word boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be even and greater than zero).

lbn is the logical block number on the DECTape where the transfer starts (must be in the range 0-577).

IO.RVB and IO.WVB are associated with file operations (see the RSX-11M I/O Operations Reference Manual). For these functions to be executed, a file must be open on the specified LUN.

CHAPTER 4. DECTAPE DRIVER

4.3.2 Device-Specific QIO Functions

The device-specific functions of the QIO macro that are valid for DECTape are shown in Table 4-2.

Table 4-2
Device-Specific Functions for DECTape

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.RLV,...,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Read logical block (reverse)
QIO\$C IO.WLV,...,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Write logical block (reverse)

Where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (must be on a word boundary).
size is the data buffer size in byte (must be even and greater than zero).
lbn is the logical block number on the DECTape where the transfer starts (must be in the range 0-577).

4.4 STATUS RETURNS

The error and status conditions listed in Table 4-3 are returned by the DECTape driver described in this chapter.

CHAPTER 4. DECTAPE DRIVER

Table 4-3
DECTape Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Successful completion The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of bytes processed, if the operation involved reading or writing.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.
IE.ALN	File already open The task attempted to open a file on the physical device unit associated with specified LUN, but a file has already been opened by the issuing task on that LUN.
IE.BLK	Illegal block number. An illegal logical block number was specified for DECTape. The number exceeds 577 (1101 octal).
IE.BYT	Byte-aligned buffer specified. Byte alignment was specified for a buffer, but only word alignment is legal for DECTape. Alternately, the length of the buffer is not an even number of bytes.
IE.DNR	Device not ready The physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not ready to perform the desired I/O operation.

CHAPTER 4. DECTAPE DRIVER

Table 4-3 (Cont.)
DECTape Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was specified in an I/O request that is illegal for DECTape.
IE.NLN	File not open The task attempted to close a file on the physical device unit associated with the specified LUN, but no file was currently open on that LUN.
IE.NOD	Insufficient buffer space Dynamic storage space has been depleted, and there was insufficient buffer space available to allocate a secondary control block. For example, if a task attempts to open a file, buffer space for the window and file control block must be supplied by the Executive. This code is returned when there is not enough space for this operation.
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.OVR	Illegal read overlay request A read overlay was requested and the physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not the physical device unit from which the task was installed. The read overlay function can only be executed on the physical device unit from which the task image containing the overlays was installed.
IE.PRI	Privilege violation The task which issued the request was not privileged to execute that request. For DECTape, this code is returned when a nonprivileged task attempts to read or write a mounted volume directly (i.e., IO.RLB, IO.RLV, IO.WLB, or IO.WLV). IE.SPC Illegal address space The buffer specified for a read or write request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately, a byte count of zero was specified.

Table 4-3 (Cont.)
DECTape Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.VER	<p>Unrecoverable error</p> <p>After the system's standard number of retries has been attempted upon encountering an error, the operation still could not be completed. For DECTape, this code is returned to indicate any of the following conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> . A parity error was encountered. . The task attempted a forward multi-block transfer past block 577 (1101 octal). . The task attempted a backward multi-block transfer past block zero.
IE.WLK	<p>Write-locked device</p> <p>The task attempted to write on a DECTape unit that was physically write-locked.</p>

4.4.1 DECTape Recovery Procedures

When a DECTape I/O error condition is detected, RSX-11M attempts to recover from the condition by retrying the function as many as five times. Unrecoverable errors are generally parity, mark track, or other errors caused by a faulty recording medium or a hardware malfunction. An unrecoverable error condition also occurs when a read or write operation is performed past the last block of the DECTape on a forward operation, or the first block of the DECTape on a reverse operation.

In addition to the standard error conditions, an unrecoverable error is reported when the "rock count" exceeds eight. The rock count is the number of times the DECTape driver reverses the direction of the tape while looking for a block number. Assume that the block numbers on a portion of DECTape are 98, 96, and 101, where one bit was dropped from block number 100, making it 96. If an I/O request is received for block 100 and the tape is positioned at block 98, the driver starts searching forward for block 100. The first block to be encountered is 96 and because the driver is searching for block 100 in a forward direction and 96 is less than 100, the search continues forward. Block 101 is the next block, and because number 101 is greater than 100, the driver reverses the direction of the tape and starts to search backward. The next block number in this direction is 96 and direction is reversed again, because 100 is greater than 96. To prevent the DECTape from being hung in this position, continually rocking between block numbers 96 and 100, a maximum rock count of eight has been established.

CHAPTER 4. DECTAPE DRIVER

4.4.2 Select Recovery

If the DECTape unit is in an off-line condition when the I/O function is performed, the message shown below is output on the operator's console.

```
*** DTn:  -- SELECT ERROR
```

where n is the unit number of the drive that is currently off-line. The user should respond by placing the unit to REMOTE. The driver retries the function, from the beginning, once every second. It displays the message once every 15 seconds until the appropriate DECTape unit is selected. A select error may also occur when there are two drives with the same unit number or when no drive has the appropriate unit number.

4.5 PROGRAMMING HINTS

This section contains information on important programming considerations relevant to users of the DECTape driver described in this chapter.

4.5.1 DECTape Transfers

If the transfer length on a write is less than 256 words, a partial block is transferred with zero fill for the rest of the physical block. If the transfer length on a read is less than 256 words, only the number of words specified is transferred. If the transfer length is greater than 256 words, more than one physical block is transferred.

4.5.2 Reverse Reading and Writing

The DECTape driver supports reverse reading and writing, because these functions speed up data transfers in some cases. A block should normally be read in the same direction in which it was written. If a block is read from a DECTape into memory in the opposite direction from that in which it was written, it is reversed in memory (e.g., word 255 becomes word 0, and 254 becomes word 1). If this occurs, the user must then reverse the data within memory.

4.5.3 Speed Considerations When Reversing Direction

It is possible to reverse direction at any time while reading or writing DECTape. However, the user should understand that reversing direction substantially slows down the movement of the tape. Because DECTape must be moving at a certain minimum speed before reading or

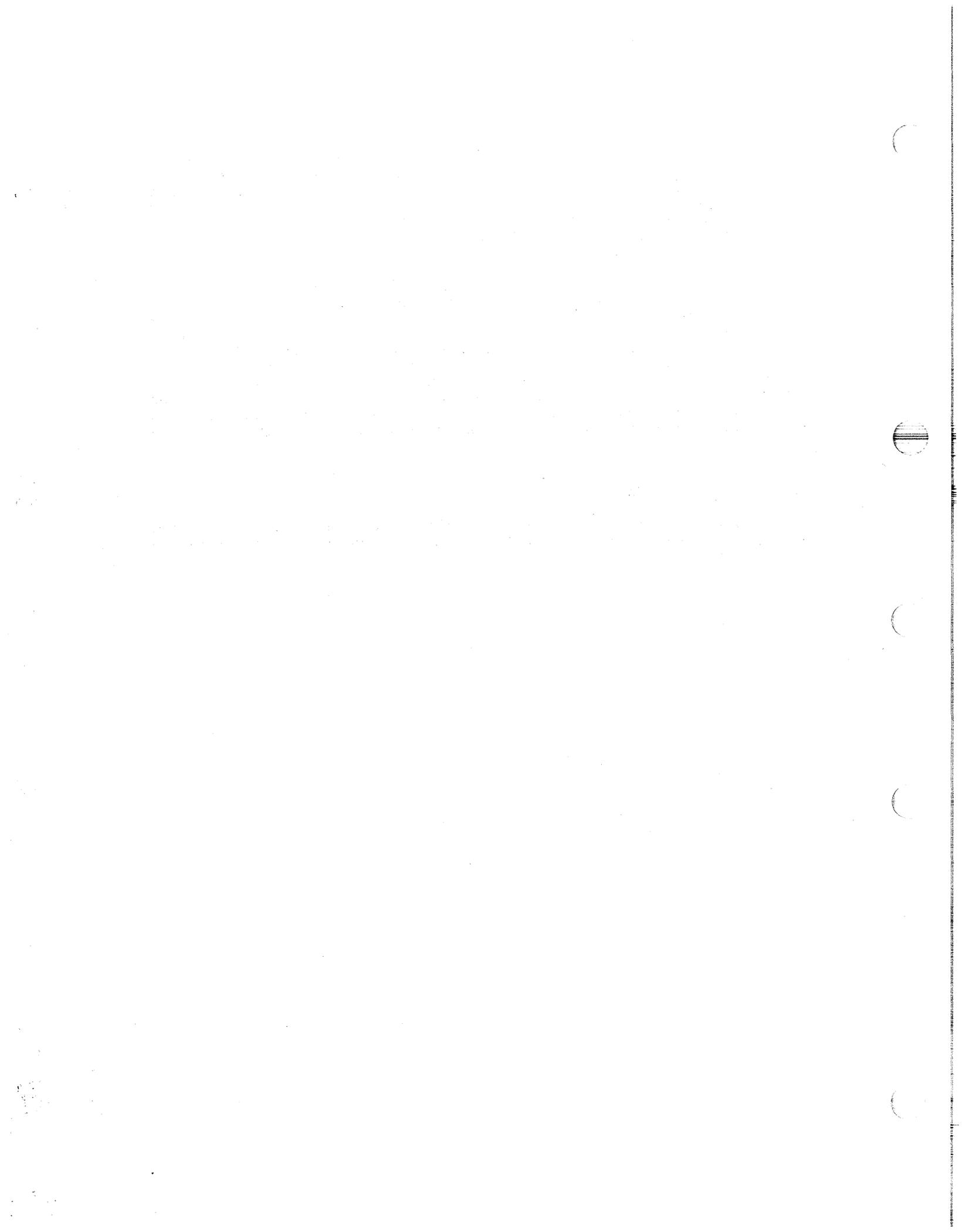
CHAPTER 4. DECTAPE DRIVER

writing can be performed, a tape block cannot be accessed immediately after reversing direction. Two blocks must be bypassed before a read or write function can be executed, to give the tape unit time to build up to normal access speed. Furthermore, when a request is issued to read or write in a certain direction, the tape first begins to move in that direction, then starts detecting block numbers. The following examples illustrate these principles.

If a DECTape is positioned at block number 12 and the driver receives a request to read block 10 forward, the tape starts to move forward, in the direction requested. When block number 14 is encountered, the driver reverses the direction of the tape, since 14 is greater than 10. The search continues backward, and block numbers 11 and 10 are encountered. Because the direction must be reversed and the driver requires two blocks to build up sufficient speed for reading, block number 9 and 8 are also bypassed in the backward direction. Then the direction is reversed and the driver encounters blocks 8 and 9 forward before reaching block number 10 and executing the read request.

4.5.4 Aborting a Task

If the user attempts to abort a task which is waiting for a DECTape unit to be selected, the unit must actually be selected before the task will actually be aborted.



CHAPTER 5

MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

5.1 INTRODUCTION

RSX-11M supports two magnetic tape devices, the TM11 and the TJU16. Table 5-1 summarizes these devices and subsequent sections describe them in greater detail.

Table 5-1
Standard Magtape Devices

	<u>TM11</u>	<u>TJU16</u>
Number of channels	7 or 9	9
Recording density, in frames per inch	For 7-channel: 200, 556, or 800; for 9-channel: 800	800 or 1600
Tape speed, in inches per second	45	45
Maximum data transfer rate, in bytes per second	36,000	For 800 bpi: 36,000; for 1600 bpi: 72,000
Recording Method	NRZI	NRZI or Phase Encoding

Programming for Magtape is quite similar to programming for the magnetic tape cassette (see Chapter 6). Unlike cassette, however, Magtape can handle variable-length records and allows the user to select a parity mode.

RSX-11M does not support a file structure for Magtape.

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

5.1.1 TM11 Magnetic Tape

The TM11 consists of a TM11 controller with a TU10 transport. It is a low-cost, high performance system for serial storage of large volumes of data and programs in an industry-compatible format. All recording is non-return-to-zero, inverted (NRZI).

5.1.2 TJU16 Magnetic Tape

The TJU16 consist of an RH11 controller, a TM02 formatter, and a TU16 transport. It is quite similar to the TM11 but is a Massbus device, with a common controller, a specialized formatter, and a drive. Recording is either 800 bpi NRZI or 1600 bpi phase-encoded (PE).

5.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

Word 2 of the buffer filled by the GET LUN INFORMATION system directive (the first characteristics word) contains the following information for Magtapes. A bit setting of 1 indicates that the described characteristic is true for Magtapes.

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Setting</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
0	0	Record-oriented device
1	0	Carriage-control device
2	0	Terminal device
3	0	Directory device
4	0	Single-directory device
5	1	Sequential device
6-12	0	Reserved
13	0	Device mountable as a communications channel
14	0	Device mountable as a FILES-11 volume
15	0	Device mountable

Words 3 and 4 of the buffer are undefined; word 5 indicates the default buffer size, for Magtapes 512 bytes.

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

5.3 QIO MACRO

This section summarizes standard and device-specific QIO functions for the Magtape drivers.

5.3.1 Standard QIO Functions

Table 5-2 lists the standard functions of the QIO macro that are valid for Magtape.

Table 5-2
Standard QIO Functions for Magtape

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.ATT,...	Attach device
QIO\$C IO.DET,...	Detach device
QIO\$C IO.KIL,...	Cancel I/O requests
QIO\$C IO.RLB,...,<stadd,size>	Read logical block (read tape into buffer)
QIO\$C IO.RVB,...,<stadd,size>	Read virtual block (read tape into buffer)
QIO\$C IO.WLB,...,<stadd,size>	Write logical block (write buffer contents to tape)
QIO\$C IO.WVB,...,<stadd,size>	Write virtual block (write buffer contents to tape)

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (must be on a word boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be even, greater than zero, and, for a write, must be at least 14 bytes).

IO.KIL does not cancel an in progress request unless a select error has occurred.

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

5.3.2 Device-Specific QIO Functions

Table 5-3 lists the device-specific functions of the QIO macro that are valid for Magtape. Additional details on certain functions appear below.

Table 5-3
Device-Specific QIO Functions for Magtape

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.EOF,...	Write end-of-file mark (tape mark)
QIO\$C IO.RWD,...	Rewind unit
QIO\$C IO.RWU,...	Rewind and turn unit off-line
QIO\$C IO.SEC,...	Read tape characteristics
QIO\$C IO.SMO,...,<cb>	Mount tape and set tape characteristics
QIO\$C IO.SPB,...,<nbs>	Space blocks
QIO\$C IO.SPF,...,<nes>	Space files
QIO\$C IO.STC,...,<cb>	Set tape characteristics

where: cb represents the characteristic bits to set.
 nbs is the number of blocks to space past (positive if forward, negative if reverse).
 nes is the number of EOF marks to space past (positive if forward, negative if reverse).

5.3.2.1 IO.RWU - IO.RWU is normally used when operator intervention is required (e.g., to load a new tape). The operator must turn the unit back on-line manually before subsequent operations can proceed.

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

5.3.2.2 IO.SEC - This function returns the tape characteristics in the second I/O status word. The tape characteristic bits are defined as follows:

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Meaning When Set</u>	<u>Can Be Set by IO.SMO and IO.STC</u>
0	For TM11, 556 bpi density (seven-channel). For TJU16, reserved	x
1	For TM11, 200 bpi density (seven-channel). For TJU16, reserved.	x
2	For TM11, core-dump mode (seven-channel, see below). For TJU16, reserved.	x
3	Even parity (default is odd).	x
4	Tape is past EOT.	
5	Last tape command encountered EOF (unless last command was backspace).	
6	Writing is prohibited.	x
7	Writing with extended inter-record gap is prohibited (i.e., no recovery is attempted after write error).	x
8	Select error on unit (reserved for driver; always 0 when read by user).	
9	Unit is rewinding (reserved for driver; always 0 when read by user).	
10	Tape is physically write-locked.	
11	For TM11, reserved. For TJU16, 1600 bpi density.	
12	For TM11, drive is seven-channel. For TJU16, reserved.	
13	Tape is at load point (BOT).	
14	Tape is at end-of-volume (EOV).	
15	Tape is past EOV.	

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

In core-dump mode (TM11 only, 800 bpi density, and seven-channel), each eight-bit byte is written on two tape frames, four bits per frame. In other modes on seven-channel tape, only six low-order bits per byte are written.

The effect of these settings is illustrated in Figure 5-1 for the TM11 and in Figure 5-2 for TJU16.

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

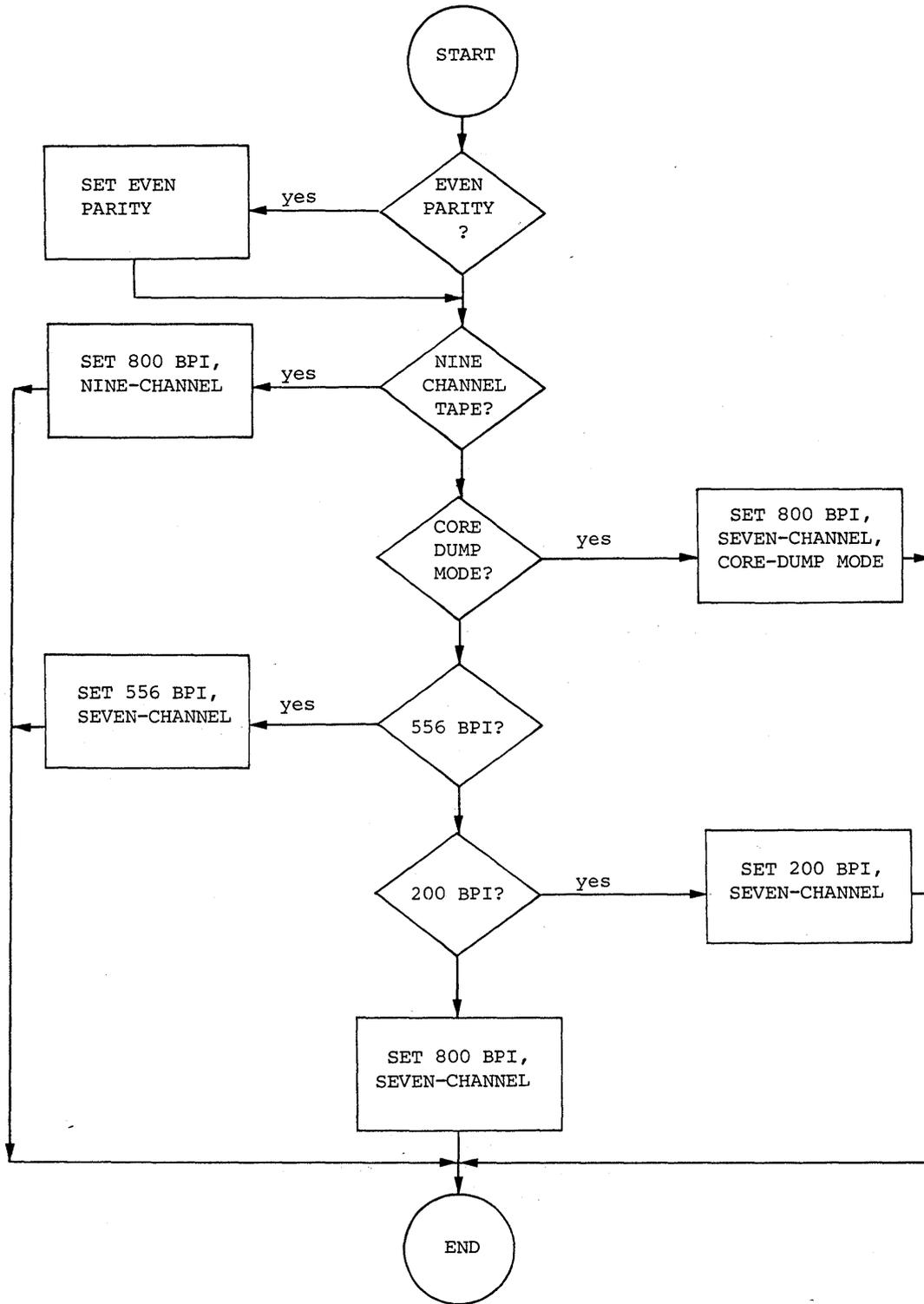


Figure 5-1
Determination of Tape Characteristics
for the TM11

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

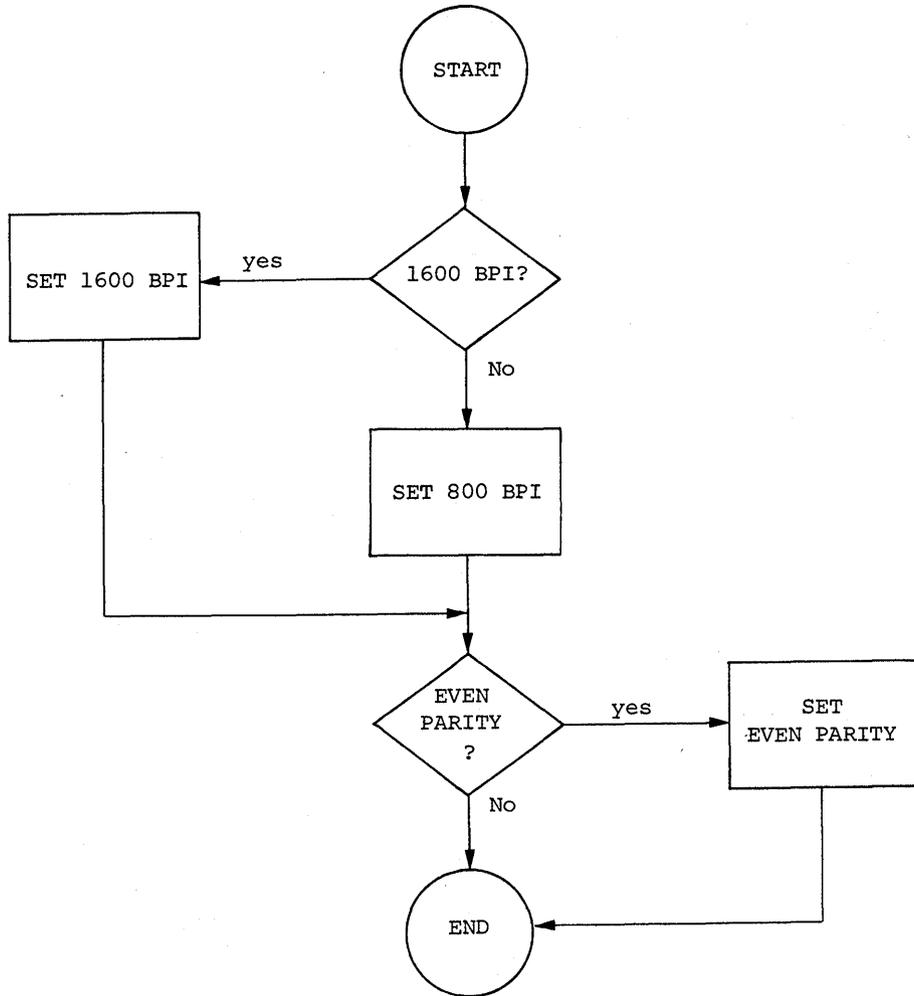


Figure 5-2
Determination of Tape Characteristics
for the TJU16

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

5.4 STATUS RETURNS

The error and status conditions listed in Table 5-4 are returned by the Magtape drivers described in this chapter.

Table 5-4
Magtape Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Successful completion The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of bytes processed, if operation involved reading or writing. This code is also returned if nbs equals zero in an IO.SPB function or if nes equals zero in an IO.SPF function.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.
IE.ABO	Operation aborted The specified I/O operation was cancelled via IO.KIL while in progress or while still in the I/O queue.
IF.BBE	Bad block A bad block was encountered while reading or writing and the error persists after nine retries. The number of bytes transferred is returned in the second word of the I/O status block. For TM11, IE.BBE may also indicate that a bad tape error (BTE) has been encountered while reading or spacing.
IE.BYT	Byte-aligned buffer specified Byte alignment was specified for a buffer, but only word alignment is legal for Magtape. Alternately, the length of a buffer is not an even number of bytes.
IE.DAA	Device already attached The physical device unit specified in an IO.ATT function was already attached by the issuing task. This code indicates that the issuing task has already attached the desired physical device unit, not that the unit was attached by another task.

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

Table 5-4 (Cont.)
Magtape Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.DAO	Data overrun On a read, a record exceeded the stated buffer size. The final portion of the buffer is checked for parity, but is not read into memory.
IE.DNA	Device not attached The physical device unit specified in an IO.DET function was not attached by the issuing task. This code has no bearing on the attachment status of other tasks.
IE.DNR	Device not ready The physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not ready to perform the desired I/O operation. This code is returned to indicate one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none">. A timeout occurred on the physical device unit (i.e., an interrupt was lost).. A vacuum failure occurred on the Magtape drive.. While trying to read or space, the driver detected blank tape.. The "LOAD" switch on the physical drive was switched to the off position.
IE.EOF	End-of-file encountered An end-of-file (tapemark) was encountered.
IE.EOT	End-of-tape encountered The end-of-tape (physical end-of-volume) was encountered while the tape was moving in the forward direction. A ten-foot length of tape is provided past EOT to be used for writing data and markers, such as volume trailer labels. The IE.EOT code will continue to be returned in the I/O status block until the EOT marker is passed in the reverse direction.

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

Table 5-4 (Cont.)
Magtape Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.EOV	End-of-volume encountered On a forward spacing function, the logical end-of-volume (two consecutive EOF marks) was encountered. The tape is normally left positioned between the two EOF marks.
IE.FHE	Fatal hardware error Fatal hardware malfunction.
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was specified in an I/O request that is illegal for Magtape.
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The buffer specified for a read or write request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. For Magtape, this code is also returned if a byte count of zero was specified or if the user attempted to write a block that was less than 14 bytes long.
IE.VER	Unrecoverable error After the system's standard number of retries has been attempted upon encountering an error, the operation still could not be completed. For Magtape, this code is returned in the case of CRC or checksum errors or when a tape block could not be read.
IE.WLK	Write-locked device The task attempted to write on a Magtape unit that was physically write-locked. Alternately, tape characteristic bit 6 was set by the software to write-lock the unit logically.

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

After read and write functions, the second I/O status word contains the number of bytes actually processed by the function. After spacing functions, it contains the number of blocks of files spaced over. The EOF mark counts as one block. If an EOF mark is encountered by a read operation, the second I/O status word will contain an octal two.

5.4.1 Select Recovery

If a request fails because the desired unit is off-line, no drive has the desired unit number, or has its power off, the following message is output on the operator's console:

```
*** MTn: -- SELECT ERROR
```

where n is the unit number of the specified drive. The driver checks the unit for readiness and repeats the message every 15 seconds until the requesting task is aborted or the unit is made available. In the latter case, the driver then proceeds with the request.

5.4.2 Retry Procedures for Reads and Writes

If an error occurs during a read (e.g., vertical parity error), the recovery procedure depends on the type of Magtape in use. A bad tape error on a TM11 results in an immediate return of the error code IE.BBE. All other read errors for both the TM11 and TJU16 are retried by backspacing one record and then rereading the record in question. If the error persists after nine retries, IE.BBE is returned.

Write recovery is the same for both the TM11 and TJU16. When a write operation fails the driver attempts to avoid the bad spot on the tape by means of an extended interrecord gap (IRG). This means that it backspaces, makes the IRG just before the record three inches longer, and then retries the write. If the error persists after nine retries, IE.BBE is returned. The requesting task can use IO.STC to prohibit writing with an extended interrecord gap. In this case, IE.BBE is returned as soon as a write fails.

5.5 PROGRAMMING HINTS

This section contains information on important programming considerations relevant to users of the Magtape drivers described in this chapter.

5.5.1 Block Size

Each block must contain an even number of bytes, at least 14 for a write and at most 65,534. It is more reasonable, however, to work with a block size of approximately 2,048 bytes.

CHAPTER 5. MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVERS

5.5.2 Importance of Resetting Tape Characteristics

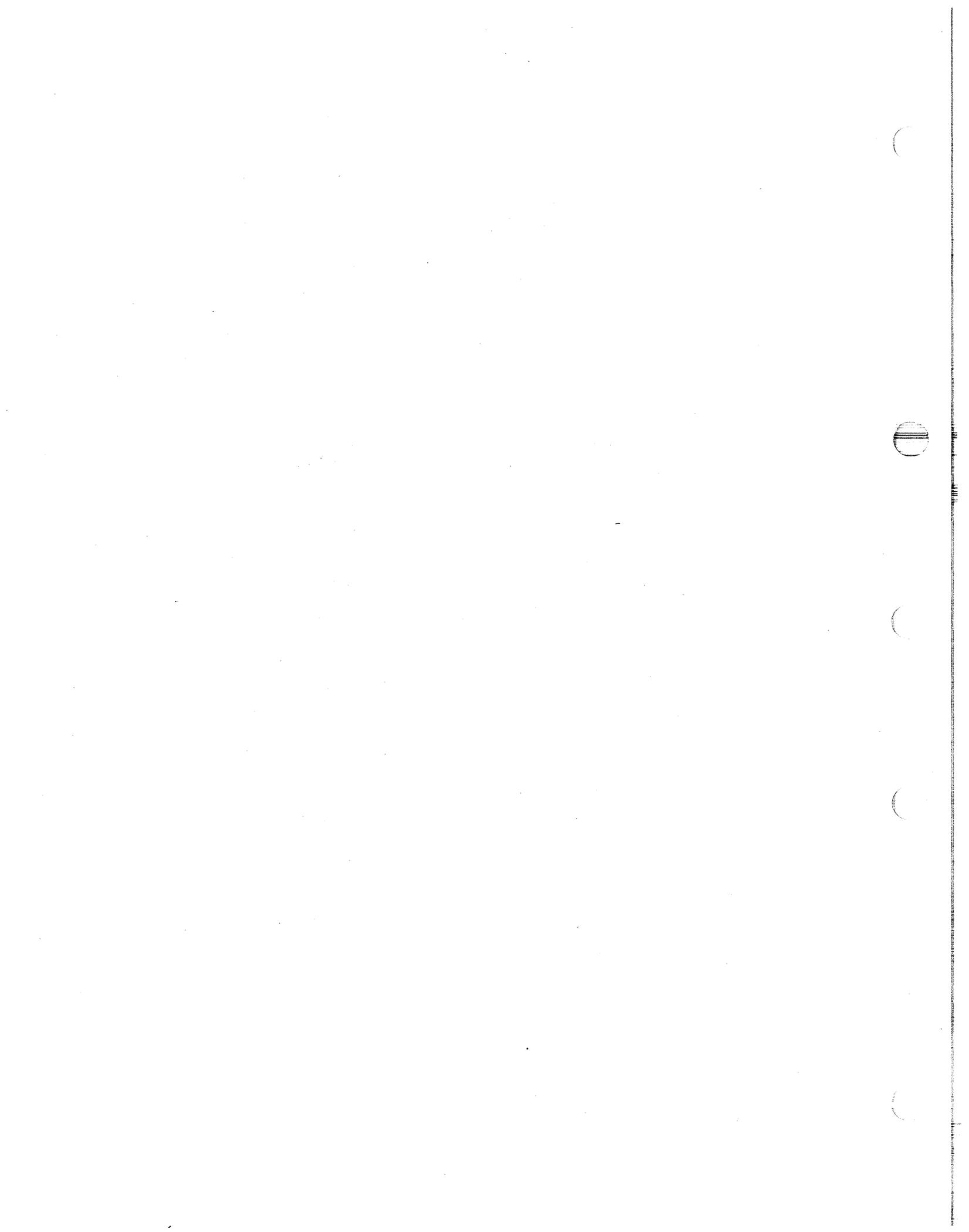
A task that uses Magtape should always set the tape characteristics to the proper value before beginning I/O operations. The task cannot be certain in what state the previous task left these characteristics. It is also possible that an operator might have changed the Magtape unit selection. If the selection switch is changed, the new physical device unit may not correspond to the characteristics of the unit described by the respective unit control block.

5.5.3 Aborting a Task

If a task is aborted while waiting for a Magtape unit to be selected, the Magtape driver recognizes this fact within 15 seconds. It is not necessary to select the Magtape unit before aborting the task, as is the case for DECTape.

5.5.4 Writing an Even-Parity Zero

If an even-parity zero were written normally, it would appear to the drive as blank tape. It is therefore converted to 20 (octal). If this conversion is undesirable, the user must ensure that no even-parity zeros are output on the tape.



CHAPTER 6

CASSETTE DRIVER

6.1 INTRODUCTION

RSX-11M supports the TAll magnetic tape cassette (a TAll controller with a TU60 dual transport). Programming for cassette is quite similar to programming for Magtape (see Chapter 5). The TAll system is a dual-drive, reel-to-reel unit designed to replace paper tape. Its two drives run nonsimultaneously, using Digital proprietary Philips-type cassettes.

The maximum capacity of a cassette, in bytes, is 92,000 (minus 300 per file gap and 46 per interrecord gap). It can transfer data at speeds of up to 562 bytes per second. Recording density ranges from 350 to 700 bits per inch, depending on tape position.

6.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

Word 2 of the buffer filled by the GET LUN INFORMATION system directive (the first characteristics word) contains the following information for cassettes. A bit setting of 1 indicates that the described characteristic is true for cassettes.

CHAPTER 6. CASSETTE DRIVER

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Setting</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
0	1	Record-oriented device
1	0	Carriage-control device
2	0	Terminal device
3	0	Directory device
4	0	Single-directory device
5	1	Sequential device
6-12	0	Reserved
13	0	Device mountable as a communications channel
14	0	Device mountable as a FILES-11 volume
15	0	Device mountable

Words 3 and 4 of the buffer are undefined; word 5 indicates the default buffer size, for cassettes 128 bytes.

6.3 QIO MACRO

This section summarizes standard and device-specific QIO functions for the cassette driver.

CHAPTER 6. CASSETTE DRIVER

6.3.1 Standard QIO Functions

Table 6-1 lists the standard functions of the QIO macro that are valid for cassette.

Table 6-1
Standard QIO Functions for Cassette

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.ATT,...	Attach device
QIO\$C IO.DET,...	Detach device
QIO\$C IO.KIL,...	Cancel I/O requests
QIO\$C IO.RLB,...,<stadd,size>	Read logical block (read tape into buffer)
QIO\$C IO.RVB,...,<stadd,size>	Read virtual block (read tape into buffer)
QIO\$C IO.WLB,...,<stadd,size>	Write logical block (write buffer contents to tape)
QIO\$C IO.WVB,...,<stadd,size>	Write virtual block (write buffer contents to tape)

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (may be on a byte boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be greater than zero).

IO.KIL does not affect in progress requests.

6.3.2 Device-Specific QIO Functions

Table 6-2 lists the device-specific functions of the QIO macro that are valid for cassette. The section on programming hints below provides more detailed information about certain functions.

CHAPTER 6. CASSETTE DRIVER

Table 6-2
Device-Specific QIO Functions for Cassette

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.EOF,...	Write end-of-file gap
QIO\$C IO.RWD,...	Rewind unit
QIO\$C IO.SPB,...,<nbs>	Space blocks
QIO\$C IO.SPF,...,<nes>	Space files

where: nbs is the number of blocks to space past (positive if forward, negative if reverse).

nes is the number of EOF gaps to space past (positive if forward, negative if reverse).

6.4 STATUS RETURNS

The error and status conditions listed in Table 6-3 are returned by the cassette driver described in this chapter.

Table 6-3
Cassette Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Successful completion The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of bytes processed, if the operation involved reading or writing, or the number of blocks or files spaced, if the operation involved spacing blocks or files.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.
IE.ABO	Operation aborted The specified I/O operation was cancelled via IO.KIL while still in the I/O queue.

CHAPTER 6. CASSETTE DRIVER

Table 6-3 (Cont.)
Cassette Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.DAA	Device already attached The physical device unit specified in an IO.ATT function was already attached by the issuing task. This code indicates that the issuing task has already attached the desired physical device unit, not that the unit was attached by another task.
IE.DAO	Data overrun The driver was not able to sustain the data rate required by the TALL controller.
IE.DNA	Device not attached The physical device unit specified by an IO.DET function was not attached by the issuing task. This code has no bearing on the attachment status of other tasks.
IE.DNR	Device not ready The physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not ready to perform the desired I/O operation. This code is returned to indicate one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none">. The cassette has not been physically inserted.. The unit is off-line.. A timeout occurred on the physical device unit (i.e., an interrupt was lost).
IE.EOF	End-of-file encountered An end-of-file gap was recognized on the cassette tape. This code is returned if an EOF gap is encountered during a read or if the cassette is physically removed during an I/O operation.

CHAPTER 6. CASSETTE DRIVER

Table 6-3 (Cont.)
Cassette Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.EOT	End-of-tape encountered While reading or writing, clear trailer at end-of-tape (EOT) was encountered. Unlike Magtape, writing beyond EOT is not permitted on cassettes. This condition is always sensed on a write before it would be sensed on a read of the same section of tape. If IE.EOT is returned during a write, the cassette head has encountered EOT before finishing the writing of the last block. It is recommended that the user rewrite the block on another cassette in its entirety.
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was specified in an I/O request that is illegal for cassette.
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The buffer specified for a read or write request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately, a byte count of zero was specified on a transfer.
IE.VER	Unrecoverable error This code is returned when a block check error occurs (see section 6.6.5). The cyclic redundancy check (CRC), a two-byte value located at the end of each block, is a checksum that is tested during all read operations to ensure that data is read correctly. If an unrecoverable error is returned, the user may attempt recovery by spacing backward one block and retrying the read operation.
IE.WLK	Write-locked device The task attempted to write on a cassette unit that was physically write-locked. This code may be returned after an IO.WLB, IO.WVB, or IO.EOF function.

CHAPTER 6. CASSETTE DRIVER

6.4.1 Cassette Recovery Procedures

If an error occurs during a read or write operation, the operation should be retried several times. The recommended maximum number of retries is nine for a read and three for a write because each retry involves backspacing, which does not always position the tape in the same place. More than three retries of a write operation may destroy previously written data. For example, to retry a write, it is best to space two blocks in reverse, then space one block forward. This insures the tape is in the proper position to rewrite the block that encountered the error.

After read and write functions, the second I/O status word contains the number of bytes actually processed by the function. After spacing functions, it contains the number of blocks or files actually spaced.

6.5 STRUCTURE OF CASSETTE TAPE

Figure 6-1 illustrates a general structure for cassette tape. A different structure can be employed if the user wishes.

Here the tape consists of blocks of data interspersed with sections of clear tape that serve as leader, trailer, interrecord gaps (IRGs), and end-of-file gaps.

The logical end-of-tape in this case consists of a sentinel label record, rather than the conventional group of end-of-file gaps. Each file must contain at least one block. The size of each block depends upon the number of bytes the user specifies when writing the block.

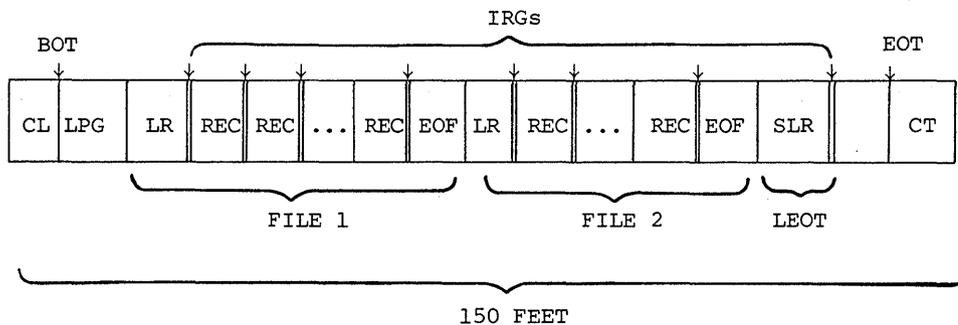


Figure 6-1
Structure of Cassette Tape

CHAPTER 6. CASSETTE DRIVER

<u>Abbreviation</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
CL	Clear leader
BOT	Physical beginning-of-tape
LPG	Load point gap (blank tape written by driver before the first retrievable record)
LR	File label record
REC	Fixed-length record (data)
EOF	End-of-file gap
IRG	Interrecord gap
SLR	Sentinel label record
LEOT	Logical end-of-tape
EOT	Physical end-of-tape
CT	Clear trailer

6.6 PROGRAMMING HINTS

This section contains information on important programming considerations relevant to users of the cassette driver described in this chapter.

6.6.1 Importance of Rewinding

The first cassette operation performed on a tape must always be a rewind to ensure that the tape is positioned to a known place. When it is positioned in clear tape there is no way to determine whether it is in leader at the beginning-of-tape (BOT) or in trailer at the end-of-tape (EOT).

CHAPTER 6. CASSETTE DRIVER

6.6.2 End-of-File and IO.SPF

The hardware senses end-of-file (EOF) as a timeout. When IO.SPF is issued in the forward direction (nes is positive), the tape is positioned two-thirds of the way from the beginning of the final file gap. In effect, this is all the way through the file gap. When IO.SPF is issued in the reverse direction (nes is negative), the tape is positioned one-third of the way from the beginning of the final file gap (i.e., two thirds of the way from the beginning of the last file spaced). Therefore to correctly position the tape for a read or write after issuing IO.SPF in reverse, the user should issue IO.SPB forward for one block, followed by IO.SPB in reverse for one block.

6.6.3 The Space Functions, IO.SPB and IO.SPF

IO.SPB always stops in an IRG, IO.SPF in an EOF gaps. Neither space function actually takes effect until data are encountered. For example, suppose the tape is positioned in clear leader at BOT and the user requests that one block be spaced forward. The drive passes over the remaining leader until it reaches data, passes one block, and stops in the IRG. Similarly, if the same command is issued when the tape is at BOT on a blank tape or a tape containing only EOF gaps, the function does not terminate until EOT.

6.6.4 Verification of Write Operations

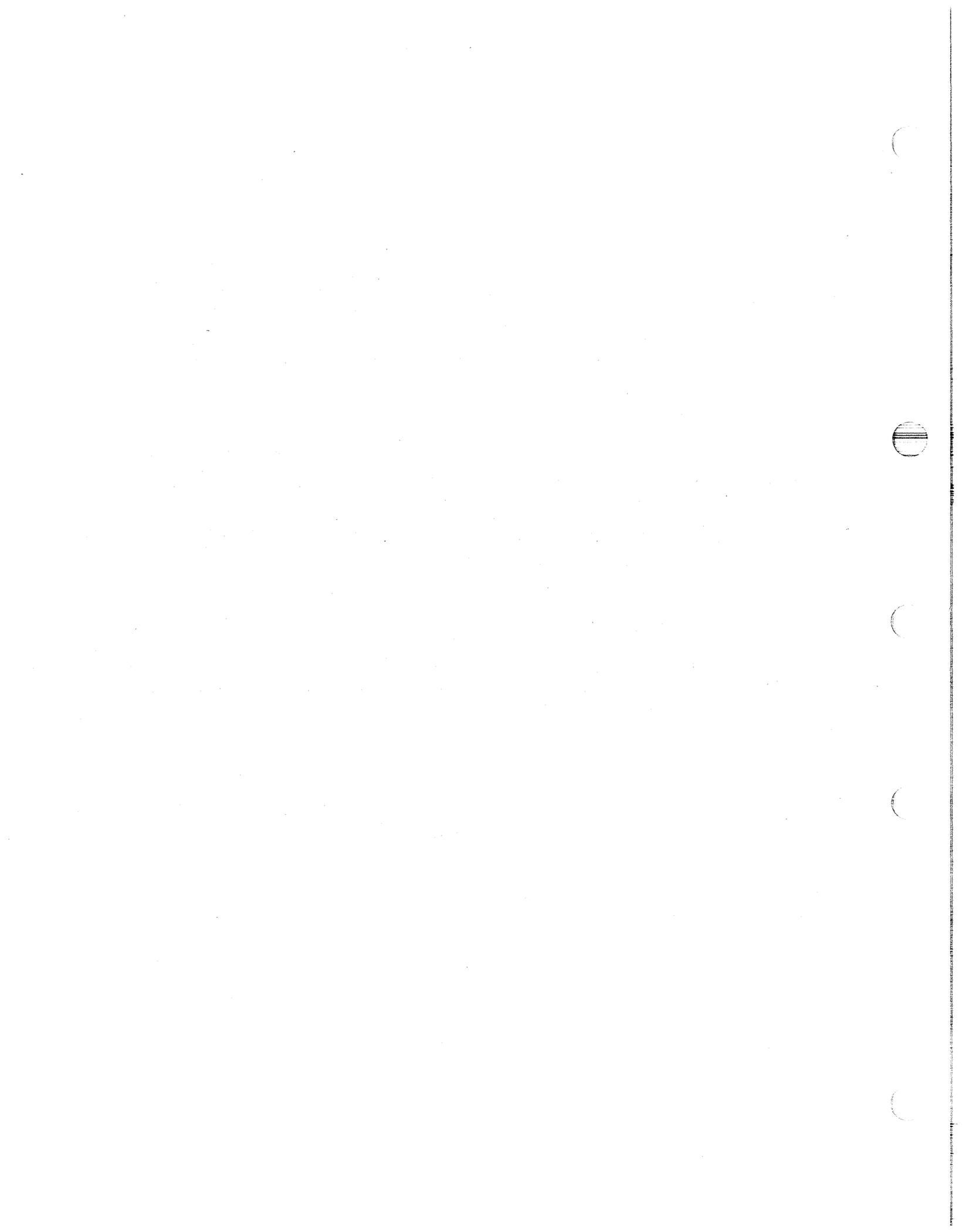
Certain errors, such as cyclic redundancy check, are detected on read but not write operations. Therefore, to ensure reliability of recording, it is recommended that the user perform a read as verification of every write operation.

6.6.5 Block Length

The user must specify the exact number of bytes per block when requesting read or write operations. An attempt to read a block with an incorrect byte count causes an unrecoverable error (see section 6.4) to occur.

6.6.6 Logical End-of-Tape

The conventional method of signaling logical end-of-tape by multiple EOF gaps is inadequate for cassettes. This is because multiple EOF gaps are not distinguishable from each other. For example, two sequential EOF gaps would be read as three instead of two. Also spacing functions, since they are triggered by encountering data, can not recognize multiple EOF gaps. Consequently, the use of a sentinel or key record to signal logical end-of-tape is recommended.



CHAPTER 7
LINE PRINTER DRIVER

7.1 INTRODUCTION

The RSX-11M line printer driver supports the line printers summarized in Table 7-1. Subsequent sections of this chapter describe these printers in greater detail.

Table 7-1
Standard Line Printer Devices

<u>Model</u>	<u>Column Width</u>	<u>Character Set</u>	<u>Lines per Minute</u>
LP11-F	80	64	170-1110
LP11-H	80	96	170-1110
LP11-J	132	64	170-1110
LP11-K	132	96	170-1110
LP11-R	132	64	1110
LP11-S	132	96	1110
LS11	132	62	60-200
LV11	132	96	500

CHAPTER 7. LINE PRINTER DRIVER

7.1.1 LP11 Line Printer

The LP11 is a high-speed line printer available in a variety of models. The entire LP11 line consists of impact printers, using one hammer per column and a revolving drum with upper-case and optional lower-case characters. The LP11-R and LP11-S are fully buffered models which operate at a standard speed of 1110 lines per minute. The other LP11 models have 20-character print buffers. These printers are therefore able to print at full speed if the print line is no longer than 20 characters. Lines which exceed this maximum are printed at a slower rate. Forms with up to six parts may be used for multiple copies.

7.1.2 LS11 Line Printer

The LS11 is a medium-speed line printer. It has a 20-character print buffer, and lines of 20 characters or less are printed at a rate of 200 lines per minute. Longer lines are printed at a slower rate. RSX-11M does not support the LS11 expanded character set feature.

7.1.3 LV11 Line Printer

The LV11 is a fully-buffered electrostatic printer-plotter which operates at a standard rate of 500 lines per minute. RSX-11M supports only the LV11 print capability, not the plotter mode.

7.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

Word 2 of the buffer filled by the GET LUN INFORMATION system directive (the first characteristics word) contains the following information for line printers. A bit setting of 1 indicates that the described characteristic is true for line printers.

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Setting</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
0	1	Record-oriented device
1	1	Carriage-control device
2	0	Terminal device
3	0	Directory device
4	0	Single-directory device
5	0	Sequential device

CHAPTER 7. LINE PRINTER DRIVER

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Setting</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
6-12	0	Reserved
13	0	Device mountable as a communications channel
14	0	Device mountable as a FILES-11 volume
15	0	Device mountable

Words 3 and 4 of the buffer are undefined; word 5 indicates the default buffer size for the device, for line printers the width of the printer carriage (i.e., 80 or 132).

7.3 QIO MACRO

Table 7-2 lists the standard functions of the QIO macro that are valid for line printers.

Table 7-2
Standard QIO Functions for Line Printers

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.ATT,...	Attach device
QIO\$C IO.DET,...	Detach device
QIO\$C IO.KII,...	Cancel I/O requests
QIO\$C IO.WLB,...,<stadd,size,vfc>	Write logical block (print buffer contents)
QIO\$C IO.WVB,...,<stadd,size,vfc>	Write virtual block (print buffer contents)

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (may be on a byte boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be greater than zero).

vfc is a vertical format control character from Table 7-4.

IO.KII does not cancel an in progress request unless the line printer is in an offline condition because of a power failure or a paper jam or because it is out of paper.

The line printer driver supports no device-specific functions.

CHAPTER 7. LINE PRINTER DRIVER

7.4 STATUS RETURNS

Table 7-3 lists the error and status conditions that are returned by the line printer driver described in this chapter.

Table 7-3
Line Printer Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Successful completion The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of bytes processed, if the operation involved writing.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.
IE.ABO	Operation aborted The specified I/O operation was canceled while in progress or while in the I/O queue.
IE.DAA	Device already attached The physical device unit specified in an IO.ATT function was already attached by the issuing task. This code indicates that the issuing task has already attached the desired physical device unit, not that the unit was attached by another task.
IE.DNA	Device not attached The physical device unit specified an IO.DET function was not attached by the issuing task. This code has no bearing on the attachment status of other tasks.

CHAPTER 7. LINE PRINTER DRIVER

Table 7-3 (Cont.)
Line Printer Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was specified in an I/O request that is illegal for line printers.
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The buffer specified for a write request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately, a byte count of zero was specified.

7.4.1 Ready Recovery

If any of the following conditions occur:

- . Paper jam
- . Printer out of paper
- . Printer turned off-line
- . Power failure

the driver determines that the line printer is off-line, and the following message is output on the operator's console:

```
*** LPn: -- NOT READY
```

where n is the unit number of the line printer that is not ready. The driver retries the function which encountered the error condition from the beginning, once every second. It displays the message every 15 seconds until the line printer is readied. If a power failure occurs while printing a line, the entire line is reprinted from the beginning when power is restored.

CHAPTER 7. LINE PRINTER DRIVER

7.5 VERTICAL FORMAT CONTROL

Table 7-4 summarizes the meaning of all characters used for vertical format control on the line printer. Any one of these characters can be specified as the vfc parameter in an IO.WLB or IO.WVB function.

Table 7-4
Vertical Format Control Characters

<u>Octal Value</u>	<u>Character</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
040	blank	SINGLE SPACE: output a line feed, print the contents of the buffer, and output a carriage return. Normally, printing immediately follows the previously printed line.
060	zero	DOUBLE SPACE: output two line feeds, print the contents of the buffer, and output a carriage return. Normally, the buffer contents are printed two lines below the previously printed line.
061	one	PAGE EJECT: output a form feed, print the contents of the buffer, and output a carriage return. Normally, the contents of the buffer are printed on the first line of the next page.
053	plus	OVERPRINT: print the contents of the buffer and perform a carriage return, normally overprinting the previous line.
044	dollar sign	PROMPTING OUTPUT: output a line feed and then print the contents of the buffer.
000	null	INTERNAL VERTICAL FORMAT: the buffer contents are printed without addition of vertical format control characters. In this mode, more than one line of guaranteed contiguous output can be printed per I/O request.

All other vertical format control characters are interpreted as blanks (octal 040).

7.6 PROGRAMMING HINTS

This section contains information on important programming considerations relevant to users of the line printer driver described in this chapter.

CHAPTER 7. LINE PRINTER DRIVER

7.6.1 RUBOUT Character

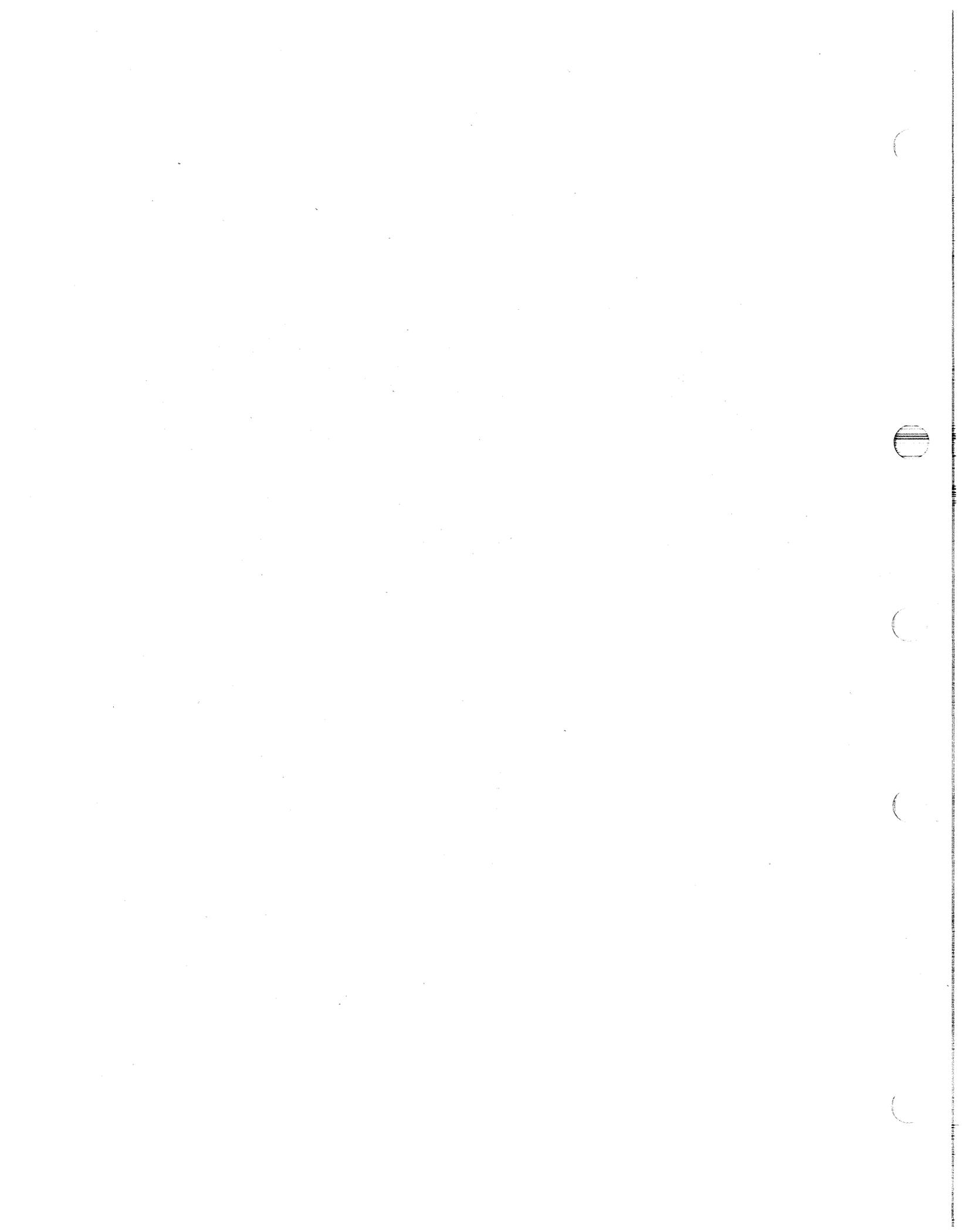
The line printer driver discards the ASCII character code 177 during output, because a RUBOUT on the LS11 printer causes a RUBOUT of the hardware print buffer.

7.6.2 Print Line Truncation

If the number of characters to be printed exceeds the width of the print carriage, the driver discards excess characters until it receives one that instructs it to empty the buffer and return to horizontal position 1. The user can determine that truncation will occur by issuing a GET LUN INFORMATION system directive and examining word 5 of the information buffer. This word contains the width of the print carriage in bytes.

7.6.3 Aborting a Task

If a task is aborted while waiting for the line printer to be readied, the line printer driver recognizes this fact within one second. It is not necessary to ready the printer before aborting the task, as is the case for DECTape.



CHAPTER 8

CARD READER DRIVER

8.1 INTRODUCTION

The RSX-11M card reader driver supports the CR11 card reader. This reader is a virtually jam-proof device which reads EIA standard 80-column punched cards at the rate of 300 per minute. The hopper can hold 600 cards. This device uses a vacuum picker which provides extreme tolerance to damaged cards and makes card wear insignificant. Cards are riffled in the hopper to prevent sticking. The reader uses a strong vacuum to deliver the bottom card. It has a very short card track, so only one card is in motion at a time.

8.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

Word 2 of the buffer filled by the GET LUN INFORMATION system directive (the first characteristics word) contains the following information for card readers. A bit setting of 1 indicates that the described characteristic is true for card readers.

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Setting</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
0	1	Record-oriented device
1	0	Carriage-control device
2	0	Terminal device
3	0	Directory device
4	0	Single-directory device
5	0	Sequential device
6-12	0	Reserved
13	0	Device mountable as a communications channel
14	0	Device mountable as a FILES-11 volume
15	0	Device mountable

Words 3 and 4 of the buffer are undefined; word 5 indicates the default buffer size, which is 80 bytes for the card reader.

8.3 QIO MACRO

This section summarizes standard and device-specific QIO functions for the card reader driver.

8.3.1 Standard QIO Functions

Table 8-1 lists the standard functions of the QIO macro that are valid for the card reader.

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

Table 8-1
Standard QIO Functions for the Card Reader

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.ATT,...	Attach device
QIO\$C IO.DET,...	Detach device
QIO\$C IO.KIL,...	Cancel I/O requests
QIO\$C IO.RLB,...,<stadd,size>	Read logical block (alphanumeric)
QIO\$C IO.RVB,...,<stadd,size>	Read virtual block (alphanumeric)

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (may be on a byte boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be greater than zero).

IO.KIL does not cancel an in progress request unless the card reader is in an offline condition because of a pick, read, stack, or hopper check, because of power failure, or because the RESET button has not been depressed.

8.3.2 Device-Specific QIO Function

The device-specific function of the QIO macro that is valid for the card reader is shown in Table 8-2.

Table 8-2
Device-Specific QIO Function for the Card Reader

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.RDB,...,<stadd,size>	Read logical block (binary)

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (may be on a byte boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be greater than zero).

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

8.4 STATUS RETURNS

There are a wide variety of error conditions and recovery procedures related to the use of the card reader. This section describes the three major ways in which the system reports error conditions.

1. Lights and indicators on the card reader panel are turned on or off to indicate particular operational problems such as read, pick, stack, or hopper checks. Switches are available to turn the reader power on and off and to allow the user to reset after correcting an error condition.
2. A message is output on the operator's console if operational checks or power problems occur.
3. An I/O completion code is returned in the low-order byte of the first word of the I/O status block specified in the QIO macro to indicate success or failure on completion of an I/O function.

The following subsections describe each of these returns in detail.

8.4.1 Card Input Errors and Recovery

The table included below describes all external lights and switches used to indicate to the operator that a hardware problem has occurred and must be corrected. There are two classes of hardware errors:

- Those requiring the operator to ready the reader and try the operation again.
- Those requiring the operator to remove the last card from the output stacker, to replace it in the input hopper, and to try the operation again.

In the first case, the card reader was unable to read the current card. In the second, the card was read incorrectly and must be physically removed from the output stacker. The card reader driver automatically restarts a read operation within one second after the cards have been replaced in the input hopper.

Table 8-3 summarizes the functions of lights and indicators on the front panel of the card reader. It discusses common operational errors which might be encountered while reading cards and recovery procedures associated with these error conditions.

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

Table 8-3
Card Reader Switches and Indicators

<u>Indicator</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Action</u>	<u>Recovery</u>
POWER switch	pushbutton indicator switch (alternate action: pressed for both ON and OFF)	Controls application of all power to the card reader. When indicator is off, depressing switch applies power to reader and causes associated indica- tor to light. When indicator is lit, depressing switch removes all power from reader and causes indicator to go out.	Card may have been read incorrectly; restore power if possible by depress- ing the POWER switch; insert the card again as the first card in the input hopper, and press the RESET switch; in some cases, it may be necessary to restart the program.
READ CHECK indicator	white light	When lit, this light indicates that the card just read may be torn on the leading or trailing edges, or that the card may have punches in column positions 0 or 81. Because READ CHECK indicates an error condition, whenever this indicator is lit, it causes the card reader to stop operation and extin- guishes the RESET indicator.	Card was read incor- rectly; duplicate if necessary, insert the card again as the first card in the input hopper and press the RESET switch.

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

Table 8-3 (Cont.)
Card Reader Switches and Indicators

<u>Indicator</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Action</u>	<u>Recovery</u>
PICK CHECK indicator	white light	When lit, this light indicates that the card reader failed to move a card into the read station after it received a READ COMMAND from the controller. Stops card reader operation and extinguishes RESET indicator.	Card could not be read; press the RESET switch to try again or remove the cards from the input hopper, smooth the leading edges, replace, and then press the RESET switch.
STACK CHECK indicator	white light	When lit, this light indicates that the previous card was not properly seated in the output stacker and therefore may be badly mutilated. Stops card reader operation and extinguishes RESET indicator.	Card may have been read incorrectly and is not positioned properly in the output stacker; duplicate the card if it is damaged; insert the card again as the first card in the input hopper and press the RESET switch.
HOPPER CHECK indicator	white light	When lit, this light indicates that either the input hopper is empty or that the output stacker is full.	Card may have been read incorrectly; empty the stacker or fill the hopper; insert the card again as the first card in the input hopper and press the RESET switch.

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

Table 8-3 (Cont.)
Card Reader Switches and Indicators

<u>Indicator</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Action</u>
STOP switch	momentary pushbutton/ indicator switch (red light)	<p>When depressed, immediately lights and drops the READY line, thereby extinguishing the RESET indicator. Card reader operation then stops as soon as the card currently in the read station has been read.</p> <p>This switch has no effect on the system power; it only stops the current operation.</p>
RESET switch	momentary pushbutton/ indicator switch (green light)	<p>When depressed and released, clears all error flip-flops and initializes card reader logic. Associated RESET indicator lights to indicate that the READY signal is applied to the controller.</p> <p>The RESET indicator goes out whenever the STOP switch is depressed or whenever an error indicator lights (READ CHECK, PICK CHECK, STACK CHECK, or HOPPER CHECK).</p>

8.4.2 Ready and Card Reader Check Recovery

If any of the following conditions occurs:

- . POWER failure
- . reset switch not pressed (reader offline)

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

the driver determines that the card reader is not ready, and the following message is output on the operator's console:

```
*** CRn: -- NOT READY
```

If any of the following conditions occurs:

- . Pick error (PICK CHECK)
- . Read error (READ CHECK)
- . Output stacker error (STACK CHECK)
- . Input hopper out of cards (HOPPER CHECK)
- . Output stacker full (HOPPER CHECK)

the driver determines that a card reader check has occurred, and the following message is output on the operator's console:

```
*** CRn: -- READ FAILURE. CHECK HARDWARE STATUS
```

where n is the unit number of the card reader that is not ready. The operator should correct the error and press RESET: the driver attempts the function from the beginning, once every second. It displays the message once every 15 seconds until the card reader is readied. In all cases except pick error, the last card read should be reinserted in the input hopper, as described in section 8.4.1.

8.4.3 I/O Status Condition

The error and status conditions listed in Table 8-4 are returned by the card reader driver described in this chapter.

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

Table 8-4
Card Reader Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Successful completion The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of bytes processed, if the operation involved reading.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.
IE.ABO	Operation aborted The specified I/O operation was canceled while in progress or while still in the I/O queue.
IE.DAA	Device already attached The physical device unit specified in an IO.ATT function was already attached by the issuing task. This code indicates that the issuing task has already attached the desired physical device unit, not that the unit was attached by another task.
IE.DNA	Device not attached The physical device unit specified in an IO.DET function was not attached by the issuing task. This code has no bearing on the attachment status of other tasks.
IE.EOF	End-of-file encountered An end-of-file control card was recognized.
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was specified in an I/O request that is illegal for card readers.
IE.NOD	Buffer allocation failure Dynamic storage space has been depleted, and there was insufficient buffer space available to allocate a card buffer (i.e., cards are read into a driver buffer translated and then moved to the user buffer).

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

Table 8-4 (Cont.)
Card Reader Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The buffer specified for a read request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately, a byte count of zero was specified.

8.5 FUNCTIONAL CAPABILITIES

The card reader driver can perform the following functions:

1. Read cards in DEC026 format and translate to ASCII.
2. Read cards in DEC029 format and translate to ASCII.
3. Read cards in binary format.

If the QIO macro specifies the IO.RLB or IO.RVB function, the driver interprets all data as alphanumeric (026 or 029 format). As explained below, control characters indicate whether 026 or 029 is desired. If the QIO macro specifies IO.RDB, the driver interprets all data, including 026 and 029 control characters, as binary.

8.5.1 Control Characters

Table 8-5 lists the multipunched cards that the card reader driver recognizes as control characters. They are never transferred to the user's buffer or included in the count of transferred bytes in alphanumeric mode. In binary mode the only control card recognized is binary EOF.

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

Table 8-5
Card Reader Control Characters

<u>Punches</u>	<u>Columns</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
12-11-0-1-6-7-8-9	1	End-of-file (alphanumeric)
12-11-0-1-6-7-8-9	(all 8 punches in the first 8 columns)	End-of-file (binary)
12-2-4-8	1	026-coded cards follow
12-0-2-4-6-8	1	029-coded cards follow

DEC026 is the default translation mode when the system is bootstrapped. This mode remains in effect until explicitly changed by a control card indicating that DEC029 cards will follow. After encountering a DEC029 control card, the driver translates all cards in DEC029 format unless another DEC026 control card is encountered. This card overrides the 029 mode specification and indicates that subsequent cards are to be translated in 026 format. Control characters are addressed to the card reader itself, and remain in effect even when the reader is attached and subsequently detached.

8.6 CARD READER DATA FORMATS

The card reader reads data in either alphanumeric or binary format.

8.6.1 Alphanumeric Format (026 and 029)

Table 8-6 summarizes the translation from DEC026 or DEC029 card codes to ASCII.

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

Table 8-6
Translation from DEC026 or DEC029 to ASCII

Character	Non-Parity ASCII	DEC029	DEC026	Character	Non-Parity ASCII	DEC029	DEC026
[	173	12 0	12 0	?	077	0 8 7	12 8 2
]	175	11 0	11 0	@	100	8 4	8 4
SPACE	040	none	none	A	101	12 1	12 1
!	041	12 8 7	12 8 7	B	102	12 2	12 2
"	042	8 7	0 8 5	C	103	12 3	12 3
#	043	8 3	0 8 6	D	104	12 4	12 4
\$	044	11 8 3	11 8 3	E	105	12 5	12 5
%	045	0 8 4	0 8 7	F	106	12 6	12 6
AND	046	12	11 8 7	G	107	12 7	12 7
'	047	8 5	8 6	H	110	12 8	12 8
(	050	12 8 5	0 8 4	I	111	12 9	12 9
)	051	11 8 5	12 8 4	J	112	11 1	11 1
*	052	11 8 4	11 8 4	K	113	11 2	11 2
+	053	12 8 6	12	L	114	11 3	11 3
,	054	0 8 3	0 8 3	M	115	11 4	11 4
-	055	11	11	N	116	11 5	11 5
.	056	12 8 3	12 8 3	O	117	11 6	11 6
/	057	0 1	0 1	P	120	11 7	11 7
0	060	0	0	Q	121	11 8	11 8
1	061	1	1	R	122	11 9	11 9
2	062	2	2	S	123	0 2	0 2
3	063	3	3	T	124	0 3	0 3
4	064	4	4	U	125	0 4	0 4
5	065	5	5	V	126	0 5	0 5
6	066	6	6	W	127	0 6	0 6
7	067	7	7	X	130	0 7	0 7
8	070	8	8	Y	131	0 8	0 8
9	071	9	9	Z	132	0 9	0 9
:	072	8 2	11 8 2	[	133	12 8 2	11 8 5
;	073	11 8 6	0 8 2	\	134	0 8 2	8 7
<	074	12 8 4	12 8 6	]	135	11 8 2	12 8 5
=	075	8 6	8 3	↑ OR	136	11 8 7	8 5
>	076	0 8 6	11 8 6	← or -	137	0 8 5	8 2

8.6.2 Binary Format

In RSX-11M binary format, the data are not packed, but are transferred exactly as read, one card column per word. Because each word has 16 bits and each card column represents only 12, the data from the column are stored in the rightmost 12 bits of the word. The word's remaining four bits contain zeros.

CHAPTER 8. CARD READER DRIVER

8.7 PROGRAMMING HINTS

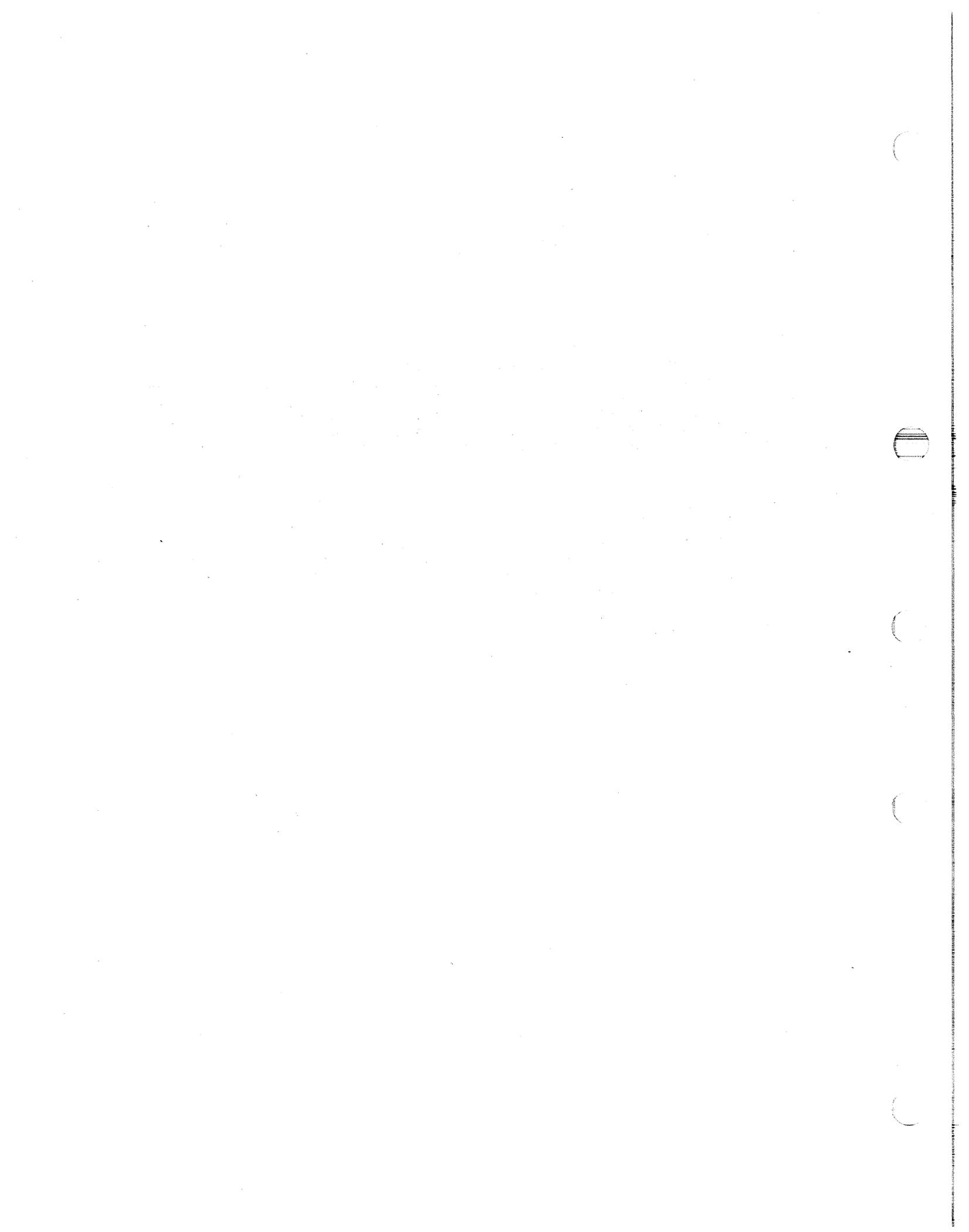
This section contains information on important programming considerations relevant to users of the card reader driver described in this chapter. Section 8.4 contains information on operational error-recovery procedures which might be important from a programming point of view.

8.7.1 Input Card Limitation

Only one card can be read with a single QIO macro call. A request to read more than 80 bytes or columns, the length of a single card, does not result in a multiple card transfer. Only 80 columns are processed. It is possible to read fewer than 80 columns of card input with a QIO read function. The user can specify that only the first 10 columns, for example, of each card are to be read.

8.7.2 Aborting a Task

If a task which is waiting for the card reader to be readied is aborted, the card reader driver recognizes this fact within one second. It is not necessary to ready the reader before aborting the task, as is the case for DECTape.



CHAPTER 9

MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS

9.1 INTRODUCTION

RSX-11M supports a variety of communication line interfaces - synchronous and asynchronous, single-line and multiplexers, character-oriented and message-oriented. These are used for terminal communications, remote job entry, multicomputer interfaces, and laboratory and industrial control communications. Communications line interfaces can be roughly divided into two categories:

- . Terminal (character-oriented) communications devices
- . Multicomputer (message-oriented) communications devices

Chapter 2 describes the character-oriented asynchronous communications line interfaces used primarily for terminal communications. The PDP-11 PERIPHERALS HANDBOOK contains more detail on these devices. This chapter describes in some detail the RSX-11M message-oriented synchronous and asynchronous communication line interfaces. These are used most frequently in multicomputer communications.

Character-oriented communications devices include the DH11, DJ11, DL11-A, DL11-B, DL11-C, and DL11-D interfaces. These are asynchronous multiplexers and single-line interfaces which are used almost exclusively for terminal communications. Transfers on all of these interfaces are performed one character at a time. None of the interfaces in this category have drivers of their own (i.e., they are supported via the terminal driver), and none can be accessed directly as RSX-11M devices.

Message-oriented communications line interfaces are used primarily to link two separate but complementary computer systems. One system must serve as the transmitting device and the other as the receiving device. Devices in this category include the synchronous and asynchronous single-line interfaces summarized in Table 9-1.

CHAPTER 9. MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS

Table 9-1
Message-Oriented Communication Interfaces

<u>Model</u>	<u>Type</u>	<u>Function</u>
DL11-E	Asynchronous	Single-line interface
DP11	Synchronous	Single-line interface
DU11	Synchronous	Single-line interface

The message-oriented communication line interfaces are used primarily to transfer large blocks of data.

Whereas the character-oriented interfaces can only be accessed indirectly through the terminal driver, the DL11-E, DP11, and DU11 allow I/O requests to be queued directly for them. These devices have drivers of their own and can be accessed by means of the logical device names listed in Table 1-1. These names can be used in assigning LUNs via the ASSIGN LUN system directive, at task build or via the REASSIGN MCR command. The following subsections briefly discuss the message-oriented interfaces supported for RSX-11M.

9.1.1 DL11-E Asynchronous Line Interface

The DL11-E is an asynchronous, serial-bit, single-line interface. It is a block-transfer device used for remote terminal and multicomputer communications. Baud rates are selectable between 50 and 9600, and full data set control is supported. A single PDP-11 can support as many as 16 DL11-E interfaces.

9.1.2 DP11 Synchronous Line Interface

The DP11 provides a program interrupt interface between a PDP-11 and a serial synchronous line. This interface facilitates the use of the PDP-11 in remote batch processing, remote data collection, and remote concentration applications. The modem control feature allows the DP11 to be used in switched or dedicated configurations.

On the DP11, baud rates are selectable between 2000 and 19,200. The programmer can select a specific sync character which is used to synchronize the transmitting and receiving systems. A single PDP-11 can support up to 16 DP11 interfaces.

CHAPTER 9. MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS

9.1.3 DUll Synchronous Line Interface

The DUll synchronous line interface is a single-line communications device which provides a program-controlled interface between the PDP-11 and a serial synchronous line. The PDP-11 can be interfaced with a high-speed line to perform remote batch processing, remote data collection, and remote concentration applications. Modem control is a standard feature of the DUll and allows the device to be used in switched or dedicated configurations. The DUll transmits data at a maximum rate of 9600 baud; this rate is limited by modem and data set interface level converters.

The DUll can be programmed to accept any user-defined sync character. The use of the sync character is the same for the DUll and the DP11. A single PDP-11 can support as many as 16 DUll interfaces.

9.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

Word 2 of the buffer filled by the GET LUN INFORMATION system directive (the first characteristics word) contains the following information for message-oriented communication interfaces. A bit setting of 1 indicates that the described characteristic is true for the interfaces described in this chapter.

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Setting</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
0	0	Record-oriented device
1	0	Carriage-control device
2	0	Terminal device
3	0	Directory device
4	0	Single-directory device
5	0	Sequential device
6-12	0	Reserved
13	1	Device mountable as a communications channel
14	0	Device mountable as a FILES-11 volume
15	1	Device mountable

Words 3 and 4 are undefined, and word 5 has a special meaning for the DP11 and the DUll interfaces. Byte 0 of word 5 contains the number of sync characters to be transmitted before a syncing message (e.g., after line turn around in half duplex operation), and byte 1 is used as a sync counter.

CHAPTER 9. MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS

9.3 QIO MACRO

This section summarizes the standard and device-specific functions of the QIO macro that are valid for the communication interfaces described in this chapter.

9.3.1 Standard QIO Functions

Table 9-2 lists the standard functions of the QIO macro that are valid for the communication devices.

Table 9-2
Standard QIO Functions for Communication Interfaces

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.ATT,...	Not applicable (NOP)
QIO\$C IO.DET,...	Not applicable (NOP)
QIO\$C IO.KIL,...	Not applicable (NOP)
QIO\$C IO.RLB,...,<stadd,size>	Read logical block (stripping sync)
QIO\$C IO.WLB,...,<stadd,size>	Write logical block (preceded by syncs)

where: **stadd** is the starting address of the data buffer (may be on a byte boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be greater than zero).

CHAPTER 9. MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS

9.3.2 Device-Specific QIO Functions

The specific functions of the QIO macro that are valid for the communication line interfaces are shown in Table 9-3.

Table 9-3
Device-Specific QIO Functions for Communication Interfaces

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.HDX,...	Set device to half-duplex mode
QIO\$C IO.INL,...	Initialize device and set device characteristics
QIO\$C IO.RNS,...,<stadd,size>	Read logical block, without stripping sync characters (transparent mode)
QIO\$C IO.SYN,...,<syn>	Specify sync character
QIO\$C IO.TRM,...	Terminate communication, disconnecting from physical channel
QIO\$C IO.WNS,...,<stadd,size>	Write logical block without preceding sync characters (transparent mode)

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (may be on a byte boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be greater than zero).

syn is the sync character, expressed as an octal value.

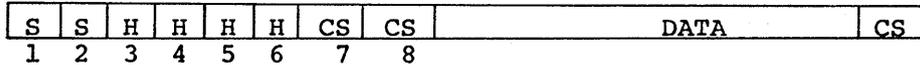
The device-specific functions listed in Table 9-3 are described in greater detail below.

9.3.2.1 IO.HDX - The IO.HDX QIO function is used to set the mode on a DL11-E, DP11, or DUL1 unit to half-duplex. The IO.HDX function code can be combined (ORed together) with the IO.SYN function code, if desired, to set the operational characteristics of the physical device unit.

CHAPTER 9. MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS

9.3.2.2 IO.INL and IO.TRM - These two QIO functions have the same function code but different modifier bits. IO.INL is used to initialize a physical device unit for use as a communications link. It turns the device on-line, sets device characteristics, and ensures that the appropriate data terminal is ready. IO.TRM disconnects the device. If it is a dial-up interface, it also hangs up the line.

9.3.2.3 IO.RNS - The IO.RNS QIO function is used to read a logical block of data, without stripping the sync characters which may precede the data. A similar function is IO.RLB, which is non-transparent, in that it causes sync characters preceding the data message to be stripped. IO.RLB is used at the start of a segmented data request, in which the block might have the following layout:



where: S is a sync character
H is a header character
CS is a validity check character

The programmer must strip sync characters from the beginning of a data block in this way. Stripping only at the beginning of a read allows a later character which happens to have the same binary value as a sync character to be read without stripping. IO.RLB is used to read a logical block with leading sync characters stripped; IO.RNS is used to read the block without stripping leading sync characters. Generally, IO.RLB should be used.

9.3.2.4 IO.SYN - This QIO function allows the programmer to specify the sync character to be recognized when an IO.RLB or IO.WLB function is performed. IO.SYN can be combined (ORed together) with IO.HDX to set the characteristics of the physical device unit.

9.3.2.5 IO.WNS - This QIO function causes a logical block to be written with no preceding sync characters. To ensure that the two systems involved in a communication are synchronized, two or more sync characters are transmitted by one system and received by the other before any other message can be sent. IO.WLB is used to write a block of data, preceded by sync characters; IO.WNS is used to perform a block transfer without sending sync characters first. Generally, IO.WLB should be used.

CHAPTER 9. MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS

9.4 STATUS RETURNS

The error and status conditions listed in Table 9-4 are returned by the communication drivers described in this chapter.

Table 9-4
Communication Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Successful completion The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of bytes processed, if the operation involved reading or writing.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.
IE.DNR	Device not ready The physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not ready to perform the desired I/O operation. This code is returned to indicate one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none">. The physical device unit could not be initialized (i.e., the circuit could not be completed).. The transmission of a character was not followed by an interrupt within the period of time selected as the device timeout period. This timeout occurs only when a transmission is in progress and the interrupt marking completion of a message does not occur. The appropriate response to this condition is to attempt to resynchronize the device by initializing and accepting the next request. A timeout does not occur on a read. If the receiving device is not ready, the transfer will not be initiated by the transmitting device. Once the transfer is initiated, however, it will complete either by satisfying the requested byte count or by timing out.

CHAPTER 9. MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS

Table 9-4 (Cont.)
Communication Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was specified in an I/O request that is illegal for message-oriented communication devices.
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The buffer specified for a read or write request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately, a byte count of zero was specified.

9.5 PROGRAMMING HINTS

This section contains information on important programming considerations relevant to users of the message-oriented communication interfaces described in this chapter.

9.5.1 Transmission Validation

Because there is no way for the transmitting device to verify that the data block has successfully arrived at the receiving device unless the receiver responds, the transmitter assumes that any message which is clocked out on the line (without line or device outage) has been successfully transmitted. As soon as the receiver is able to satisfy a read request, it returns a successful status code (IS.SUC) in the I/O status block. Of course, only the task which receives the message can determine whether or not the message has actually been transmitted accurately.

The receiving device should be ready to receive data (with a read request) at the time the transmission is sent.

CHAPTER 9. MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS

9.5.2 Redundancy Checking

By the nature of message-oriented communications, only the task which receives a communication can determine whether or not the message was received successfully. The transmitter simply transfers data, without validation of any kind. It is therefore the responsibility of the communicating tasks which use the device to check the accuracy of the transmission. A simple validity check is a checksum-type longitudinal redundancy check. A better approach to validating data is the use of a cyclic redundancy check (CRC). A CRC can be computed in software or with a hardware device, such as the KG-11 communications arithmetic option.

9.5.3 Half-Duplex Considerations

Only half-duplex mode is supported for the message-oriented communication interfaces described in this chapter. A unit must be explicitly declared half-duplex by setting the mode with an IO.HDX QIO function. Because there is a single I/O request queue, only one QIO request can be performed at a time. It is therefore not possible, through QIOs, for a device to send and receive data at the same time.

9.5.4 Low-Traffic Sync Character Considerations

If message traffic on a line is low, each message sent from a communications device should be preceded by a sync train. This enables the controller to resynchronize if a message is "broken" (i.e., part or all of it is lost in transmission). Correspondingly, every message received by a communications device under low-traffic conditions, when messages are not contiguous (back-to-back), should be read via an IO.RLB (read, strip sync) function. This requires that the first character in the data message itself not have the binary value of the sync character.

9.5.5 Vertical Parity Support

Vertical parity is not supported by the DL11-E, DP11, and DUL1. Codes are assumed to be eight-bit only.

CHAPTER 9. MESSAGE-ORIENTED COMMUNICATION DRIVERS

9.5.6 Importance of IO.INL

After the type of communication line has been determined, and after IO.SYN has specified the sync character, it is extremely important that IO.INL be issued before any transfers occur. This ensures that appropriate parameters are initialized and that the interface is properly conditioned. Note that IO.INL provides the only means of setting device characteristics, such as sync character. For this reason, IO.INL should always be used immediately prior to the first transfer over a newly-activated link.

9.6 PROGRAMMING EXAMPLE

The following example illustrates the initialization, setting of device parameters, and transmission of a block of data on a message-oriented communication device.

```
.MCALL  ALUN$$,QIO$$
.
.
.
ALUN$$  #1, #"XP, #0 ; USE LUN1 FOR DP11
QIO$$   #IO.HDX!IO.SYN, #1, , , , , <#226> ; SET DEVICE PARAMETERS
QIO$$   #IO.INL, #1 ; PUT DEVICE ON LINE
QIO$$   #IO.WLB, #1, , , #TXSTS, #TXAST, <#TXBUF, #100>; SEND A BLOCK
.
.
.
TXAST:  CMPB   #IS.SUC&377, @(SP)+ ; WAS DATA CLOCKED OUT
; SUCCESSFULLY?
        BEQ    10$ ; IF SO, SET UP FOR NEXT
; BLOCK
```

CHAPTER 10

ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

10.1 INTRODUCTION

The AFC11 and AD01-D analog-to-digital (A/D) converters are used for the acquisition of industrial and laboratory analog data. Although each has its own driver, programming for both is quite similar and both are multichannel, programmable gain devices. The AD01-D should not be confused with the ADU01, a UDC module, which is described in Chapter 11. Table 10-1 compares the AFC11 and the AD01-D briefly, and subsequent sections describe these devices in greater detail.

Table 10-1
Standard Analog-to-Digital Converters

	<u>AFC11</u>	<u>AD01-D</u>
Maximum sampling rate (points per second)	200 (20 per single channel)	Approximately 10,000
Number of bits	13 or 14	10 or 11
Maximum number of analog channels that can be multiplexed	1024	64

10.1.1 AFC11 Analog-to-Digital Converter

The AFC11 is a differential analog input subsystem for industrial data-acquisition and control systems. It multiplexes signals, selects gain, and performs a 13- or 14-bit analog-to-digital conversion under program control. With the use of appropriate signal-conditioning modules, the system can intermix and accept low-level, high-level, and current inputs, with a high degree of noise immunity.

CHAPTER 10. ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

10.1.2 AD01-D Analog-to-Digital Converter

The AD01-D is an extremely fast analog data-acquisition system. It multiplexes signals, selects gain, and performs a 10- or 11-bit analog-to-digital conversion under program control. The AD01-D is normally unipolar, but an optional sign-bit facilitates bipolar operation.

10.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

If a GET LUN INFORMATION system directive is issued for a LUN associated with an analog-to-digital converter, word 2 (the first characteristics word) contains all zeros, words 3 and 4 are undefined, and word 5 is not significant, since there is no concept of a default buffer size for analog-to-digital converters.

10.3 QIO MACRO

This section summarizes standard and device-specific QIO functions for analog-to-digital converters.

10.3.1 Standard QIO Function

The standard function that is valid for analog-to-digital converters is shown in Table 10-2.

Table 10-2
Standard QIO Function for the A/D Converters

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.KIL,...	Cancel I/O requests

Since all requests are processed with a small amount of time, no in progress request is ever canceled. This function simply cancels all queued requests.

10.3.2 Device-Specific QIO Function

The device-specific function of the QIO macro that is valid for analog-to-digital converters is shown in Table 10-3.

CHAPTER 10. ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

Table 10-3
Device-Specific QIO Function for the A/D Converters

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.RBC,....,<stadd,size,stcnta>	Initiate multiple A/D conversions

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (must be on a word boundary).

size is the control buffer size in bytes (must be even and greater than zero); the data buffer is the same size.

stcnta is the starting address of the control buffer (must be on a word boundary); each control buffer word must be constructed as shown in Table 10-4.

Table 10-4
A/D Conversion Control Word

<u>Bits</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>AFC11</u>	<u>AD01-D</u>
0-11	Channel number	Range: 0-1023	Range: 0-63
12-15	Gain value for this sample, expressed as a bit pattern as follows	Gain:	Gain:

<u>15</u>	<u>14</u>	<u>13</u>	<u>12</u>		
0	0	0	0	1	1
0	0	0	1	2	2
0	0	1	0	illegal	4
0	0	1	1	illegal	8
0	1	0	0	10	illegal
0	1	0	1	20	illegal
0	1	1	0	illegal	illegal
0	1	1	1	illegal	illegal
1	0	0	0	50	illegal
1	0	0	1	100	illegal
1	0	1	0	illegal	illegal
1	0	1	1	illegal	illegal
1	1	0	0	200	illegal
1	1	0	1	1000	illegal
1	1	1	0	illegal	illegal
1	1	1	1	illegal	illegal

CHAPTER 10. ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

10.4 FORTRAN INTERFACE

A collection of FORTRAN-callable subroutines provide FORTRAN programs access to the AFC11 and the AD01-D. These are described in this section. All are reentrant and may be placed in a resident library.

10.4.1 Synchronous and Asynchronous Process Control I/O

The ISA standard provides for synchronous and asynchronous I/O. Synchronous I/O is indicated by appending a "W" to the name of the subroutine (e.g., AISQ/AISQW). The synchronous call suspends task execution until the I/O operation is complete. If the asynchronous form is used, execution continues and the calling program must periodically test the status word for completion.

10.4.2 The isb Status Array

The isb (I/O status block) parameter is a two-word integer array that contains the status of the FORTRAN call, in accordance with ISA convention. This array serves two purposes:

1. It is the 2-word I/O status block to which the driver returns an I/O status code on completion of an I/O operation.
2. The first word of isb receives a status code from the FORTRAN interface in ISA-compatible format, with the exception of the I/O pending condition, which is indicated by a status of zero. The ISA standard code for this condition is +2.

The meaning of the contents of isb varies, depending on the FORTRAN call that has been executed, but Table 10-5 lists certain general principles that apply. The section describing each subroutine provides further details.

CHAPTER 10. ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

Table 10-5
Contents of First Word of isb

<u>Contents</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
isb(1) = 0	Operation pending; I/O in progress
isb(1) = 1	Successful completion
isb(1) = 3	Interface subroutine unable to generate QIO directive or number of samples is zero
$3 < \text{isb}(1) \leq 300$	QIO directive rejected and actual error code = $-(\text{isb}(1) - 3)$
isb(1) > 300	Driver rejected request and actual error code = $-(\text{isb}(1) - 300)$

Unless otherwise specified, the value of isb(2) is the value returned by the driver to the second word of the I/O status block.

FORTRAN interface subroutines depend on asynchronous system traps to set their status. Thus, if the trap mechanism is disabled, proper status cannot be set.

10.4.3 FORTRAN Subroutine Summary

Table 10-6 lists the FORTRAN interface subroutines supported for the AFC11 and AD01-D under RSX-11M.

Table 10-6
FORTRAN Interface Subroutines for the AFC11 and AD01-D

<u>Subroutine</u>	<u>Function</u>
AIRD/AIRDW	Perform input of analog data in random sequence
AISQ/AISQW	Read a series of sequential analog input channels
ASADLN	Assign a LUN to AD0:
ASAFLN	Assign a LUN to AF0:

CHAPTER 10. ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

The following subsections briefly describe the function and format of each FORTRAN subroutine call. Note the use of ASADLN and ASAFLN to assign a default logical unit number.

10.4.4 AIRD/AIRDW: Performing Input of Analog Data in Random Sequence

The ISA standard AIRD/AIRDW FORTRAN subroutines input analog data in random sequence. These calls are issued as follows:

$$\text{CALL } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{AIRD} \\ \text{AIRDW} \end{array} \right\} (\text{inm}, \text{icont}, \text{idata}, [\text{isb}], [\text{lun}])$$

where: inm specifies the number of analog input channels.

icont is an integer array containing terminal connection data - channel number (right-justified in bits 0-11) and gain (bits 12-15), as shown in Table 10-4.

idata is an integer array to receive the converted values.

isb is a two-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned

lun is the logical unit number.

The isb array has the standard meaning defined in section 10.4.2. If inm = 0, then isb(1) = 3. The contents of idata are undefined if an error occurs.

10.4.5 AISQ/AISQW: Reading Sequential Analog Input Channels

The ISA standard AISQ/AISQW FORTRAN subroutines read a series of sequential analog input channels. These calls are issued as follows:

$$\text{CALL } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{AISQ} \\ \text{AISQW} \end{array} \right\} (\text{inm}, \text{icont}, \text{idata}, [\text{isb}], [\text{lun}])$$

where: inm specifies the number of analog input channels.

icont is an integer array containing terminal connection data - channel number (right-justified in bits 0-11) and gain (bits 12-15), as shown in Table 10-4.

idata is an integer array to receive the converted values.

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

lun is the logical unit number.

CHAPTER 10. ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

For sequential analog input, channel number is computed in steps of one, beginning with the value specified in the first element of `icont`. The channel number field is ignored in all other elements of the array.

The gain used for each conversion is taken from the respective element in `icont`. Thus, even though the channel number is ignored in all but the first element of `icont`, the gain must be specified for each conversion to be performed.

The `isb` array has the standard meaning defined in section 10.4.2. If `inm = 0`, then `isb(1) = 3`. The contents of `idata` are undefined if an error occurs.

10.4.6 ASADLN: Assigning a LUN to AD0:

The `ASADLN` FORTRAN subroutine assigns the specified LUN to `AD0:` and defines it as the default logical unit number to be used whenever a LUN specification is omitted from an `AIRD(W)/AISQ(W)` subroutine call. It is issued as follows:

```
CALL ASADLN (lun,[isw])
```

where: `lun` is the logical unit number to be assigned to `AD0:` and defined as the default unit.

`isw` is an integer variable to which the result of the `ASSIGN LUN` system directive is returned.

Only the LUN specified in the last call to `ASADLN` or `ASAFLN` is defined as the default unit.

10.4.7 ASAFLN: Assigning a LUN to AF0:

The `ASAFLN` FORTRAN subroutine assigns the specified LUN to `AF0:` and defines it as the default logical unit number to be used whenever a LUN specification is omitted from an `AIRD(W)/AISQ(W)` subroutine call. It is issued as follows:

```
CALL ASAFLN (lun,[isw])
```

CHAPTER 10. ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

where: lun is the logical unit number to be assigned to AF0: and defined as the default unit.

isw is an integer variable to which the status from the ASSIGN LUN system directive is returned.

Only the LUN specified in the last call to ASAF LN or ASAD LN is defined as the default unit.

10.5 STATUS RETURNS

The error and status conditions listed in Table 10-7 are returned by the analog-to-digital converter drivers described in this chapter.

Table 10-7
A/D Converter Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Successful completion The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of A/D conversions performed.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.
IE.ABO	Operation aborted The specified I/O operation was cancelled via IO.KIL while still in the I/O queue.
IF.BAD	Bad parameter An illegal specification was supplied for one or more of the device-dependent QIO parameters (words 6-11). For the analog-to-digital converters, this code indicates that a bad channel number or gain code was specified in the control buffer.

CHAPTER 10. ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

Table 10-7 (Cont.)
A/D Converted Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.BYT	Byte-aligned buffer specified Byte alignment was specified for a data or control buffer, but only word alignment is legal for analog-to-digital convertors. Alternately, the length of the data and control buffer is not an even number of bytes.
IE.DNR	Device not ready The physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not ready to perform the desired I/O operation. For the AFC11, this code is returned if an interrupt timeout occurred or the power failed. In the case of the AD01-D, which is not operated in interrupt mode, this code indicates a software timeout occurred (i.e. a conversion did not complete within 30 microseconds).
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was specified in an I/O request that is illegal for analog-to-digital convertors.
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The data or control buffer specified for a conversion request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately, a byte count of zero was specified.

FORTTRAN interface values for these subroutines are presented in section 10.5.1.

CHAPTER 10. ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

10.5.1 FORTRAN Interface Values

The values listed in Table 10-8 are returned in FORTRAN subroutine calls.

Table 10-8
FORTRAN Interface Values

<u>Status Return</u>	<u>FORTRAN Value</u>
IS.SUC	+01
IS.PND	+00
IE.ABO	+315
IE.ADP	+101
IE.BAD	+301
IE.BYT	+319
IE.DAO	+313
IE.DNR	+303
IE.IEF	+100
IE.IFC	+302
IE.ILU	+99
IE.NOD	+323
IE.ONP	+305
IE.PRI	+316
IE.RSU	+317
IE.SDP	+102
IE.SPC	+306
IE.ULN	+08
IE.UPN	+04

10.6 FUNCTIONAL CAPABILITIES

The AFC11 and AD01-D operate only in multi-sample mode, because the user can simulate single-sample mode by simply specifying one sample. Multi-sample mode permits many channels to be sampled at approximately the same time without requiring the user to queue multiple I/O requests.

The maximum number of channels in the configuration is specified at system-generation time. This value is stored in the respective AFC11 and AD01-D unit control blocks.

10.6.1 Control and Data Buffers

The user must define two buffers of equal size, the control buffer and the data buffer. The former contains the control words needed to perform one A/D conversion per channel specified. Each control word indicates the channel to be sampled and the gain to be applied (see Table 10-4).

CHAPTER 10. ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

The data buffer receives the results of the conversions. Each result is placed in the data buffer location that corresponds to the control word that specified it.

10.7 PROGRAMMING HINTS

This section contains information on important programming considerations relevant to users of the analog-to-digital converter drivers described in this chapter.

10.7.1 Use of A/D Gain Ranges

Note that the A/D gain ranges overlap. The key to successful use of the A/D converters is to change to a higher gain whenever a full-scale reading is imminent and to change to a lower gain whenever the last A/D value recorded was less than half of full scale. This method maintains maximum resolution while avoiding saturation.

10.7.2 Identical Channel Numbers on the AFC11

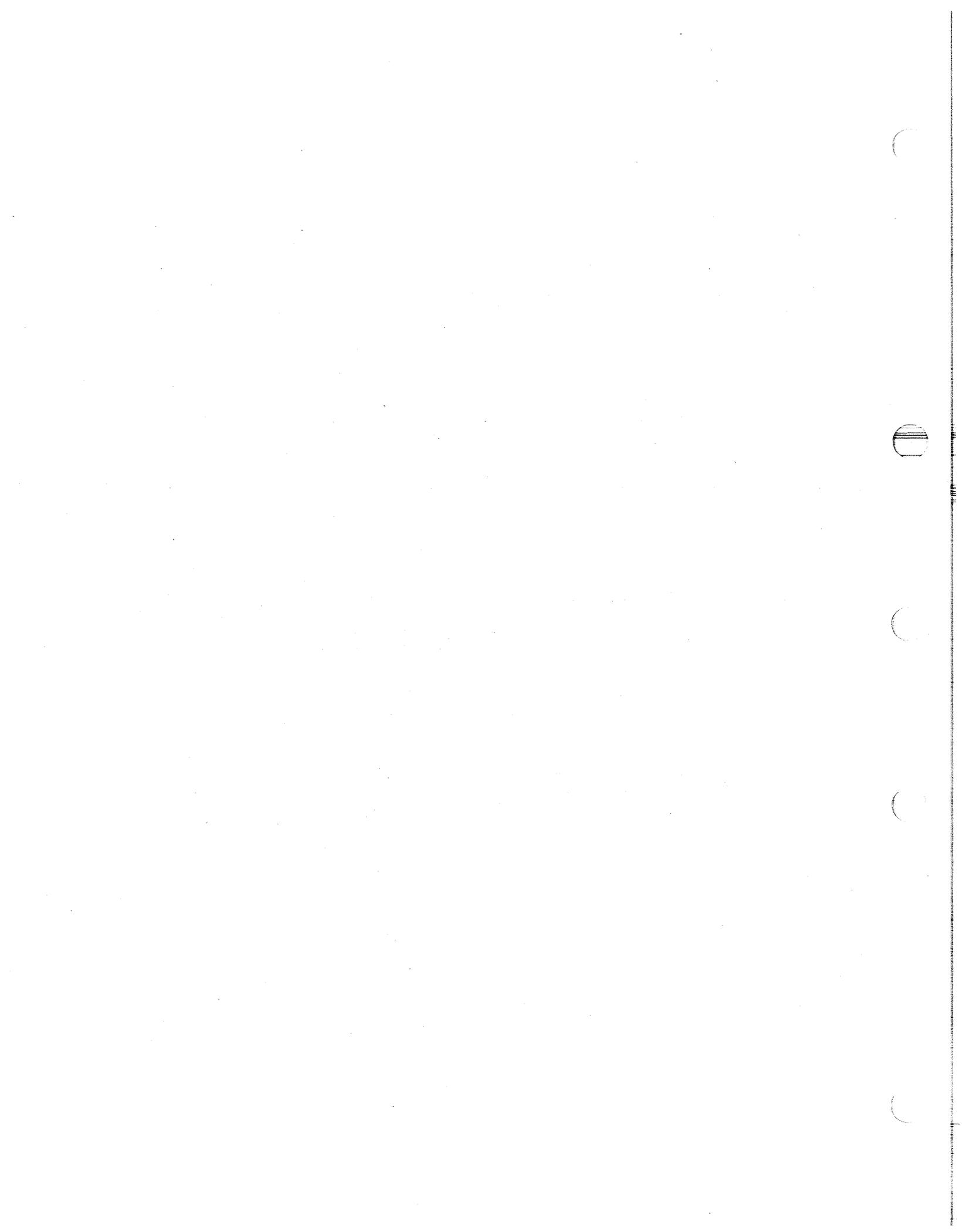
When requesting sampling of more than one channel, the user should not specify multiple sampling of a single channel without 10 or more intervening samples on other channels. This ensures 50 milliseconds between samples on a single channel. If sampling occurs more often than this on a single channel, partial results are returned (see 10.7.3 below).

10.7.3 AFC11 Sampling Rate

Although the AFC11 can sample a maximum of 200 points per second, a single channel can only be sampled at 20 points per second. Because the channel capacitor needs 50 milliseconds to recharge after each conversion, more frequent sampling may result in partial readings. If this occurs, the user will receive no indication that information is being lost. To ensure that information is not lost on any one channel, the user should sample approximately ten other channels before returning to the first one.

10.7.4 Restricting the Number of AD01-D Conversions

The AD01-D is an extremely fast device, providing a 25-microsecond conversion rate, and is driven programmably to minimize system overhead. However, an excessive number of conversions in a single request essentially locks out the rest of the system because the driver does not return control to the system until it has finished all the specified conversions. No other task can run, although interrupts can still occur and are processed.



CHAPTER 11

UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

11.1 INTRODUCTION

The UDC11 is a digital input/output system for industrial and process control applications. It interrogates and/or drives up to 252 directly addressable digital sense and/or control modules. The UDC11 operates under program control as a high-level digital multiplexer, interrogating digital inputs and driving digital outputs.

While performing analog-to-digital conversions, the UDC11 driver can handle other functions, such as contact or timer interrupts or latching output. These functions are performed immediately, without requiring any in progress analog-to-digital conversions to first be completed.

Unlike other RSX-11M I/O device drivers, the UDC11 driver is neither a multicontroller nor a multiunit driver.

11.1.1 Creating the UDC11 Driver

Since different installations have different configurations of modules, no preassembled driver is supplied with the RSX-11M system. Each installation must assemble the driver source module with a prefix file that defines the particular hardware configuration.

The prefix file is created at system generation according to the user's response to questions relating to the UDC11. This file is named RSXMC.MAC and includes symbolic definitions of the UDC11 configuration. These definitions encode the relative module number and the number of modules for each generic type specified in the system generation dialog. The encoding has the following format:

8	8
number of modules	starting module number

One or more of the following symbols is generated:

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Module Type</u>
U\$\$ADM	Analog input
U\$\$AOM	Analog output
U\$\$CIM	Contact interrupt
U\$\$CSM	Contact sense input
U\$\$LTM	Latching digital output
U\$\$SSM	Single-shot digital output
U\$\$TIM	Timer (I/O counter)

Note that all modules of a given type must be installed together in sequential slots.

11.1.2 Accessing UDC11 Modules

RSX-11M provides two methods of accessing the UDC11:

1. A QIO macro call issued to the driver
2. Restricted direct access by any task to I/O page registers dedicated to the UDC11

The first method, access through the driver, is required to service interrupting modules and to set and record the state of latching digital output modules.

The second method, direct access, is a high-speed, low-overhead way to service noninterrupting modules. The following functions may be performed:

- . Analog output
- . Contact sense input
- . Single-shot digital output
- . Read a contact interrupt module
- . Read a timer module

11.1.2.1 Driver Services - The driver services the following types of modules:

1. Contact interrupt
2. Timer (I/O counter)
3. Analog input
4. Latching digital output

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

Contact and timer interrupts need not be serviced by a single task. One task may be connected to contact interrupts, and another to timer interrupts. A nonprivileged task can connect to either or both of these classes by providing a circular buffer to receive interrupt information and an event flag to allow triggering of the task whenever a buffer entry is made.

11.1.2.2 Direct Access - A global common block within the I/O page provides restricted direct access to the UDC11 device registers. In a mapped system, the length of the block is set to prevent access to other device registers. In an unmapped system, the use of the common block is optional. Section 11.4 explains direct access more fully.

11.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

If a GET LUN INFORMATION system directive is issued for a LUN associated with the UDC11, word 2 (the first characteristics word) contains all zeros, words 3 and 4 are undefined, and word 5 is not significant, since there is no concept of a default buffer size for universal digital controllers.

11.3 QIO MACRO

This section summarizes standard and device-specific QIO functions for the UDC11 driver. In issuing them, note the numbering conventions described in 11.7.2.

11.3.1 Standard QIO Function

The standard function that is valid for the UDC11 is shown in Table 11-1.

Table 11-1
Standard QIO Function for the UDC11

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.KIL,...	cancel I/O requests

IO.KIL cancels all queued requests and disconnects all interrupt connections, but does not stop any I/O that is currently in progress.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

11.3.2 Device-Specific QIO Functions

Table 11-2 summarizes device-specific QIO functions that are supported for the UDC11.

Table 11-2
Device-Specific QIO Functions for the UDC11

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.CCI, ..., <stadd, sizb, tevf>	Connect a buffer to contact interrupts
QIO\$C IO.CTI, ..., <stadd, sizb, tevf, arv>	Connect a buffer to timer interrupts
QIO\$C IO.DCI, ...	Disconnect a buffer from contact interrupts
QIO\$C IO.DTI, ...	Disconnect a buffer from timer interrupts
QIO\$C IO.ITI, ..., <mn, ic>	Initialize a timer
QIO\$C IO.MLO, ..., <opn, pp, dp>	Open or close latching digital output points
QIO\$C IO.RBC, ..., <stadd, size, stcnta>	Initiate multiple A/D conversions

where: stadd is the starting address of the data buffer (must be on a word boundary).

sizb is the data buffer size in bytes (must be even and large enough to include a 2-word buffer header plus one data entry; the buffer may cross a 4K boundary).

tevf is the trigger event flag number (in range 1 through 64).

arv is the starting address of the table of initial/reset values (must be on a word boundary).

mn is the module number.

ic is the initial count.

opn is the first latching digital output point number, which must be on a module boundary (evenly divisible by 16).

pp is the 16-bit mask.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

dp is the data pattern.

size is the control buffer size in bytes (must be even and greater than zero); the data buffer is the same size.

stcnta is the starting address of the control buffer (must be on a word boundary); each control buffer word must be constructed as shown in Table 11-3.

The following sections describe the functions listed in Table 11-2.

Table 11-3
A/D Conversion Control Word

<u>Bits</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>ADU01</u>
0-11	Channel number	Range: 0-1023
12-15	Gain value for this sample, expressed as a bit pattern as follows	Gain:
	<u>15</u> <u>14</u> <u>13</u> <u>12</u>	
	0 0 0 0	1
	0 0 0 1	2
	0 0 1 0	illegal
	0 0 1 1	illegal
	0 1 0 0	10
	0 1 0 1	20
	0 1 1 0	illegal
	0 1 1 1	illegal
	1 0 0 0	50
	1 0 0 1	100
	1 0 1 0	illegal
	1 0 1 1	illegal
	1 1 0 0	200
	1 1 0 1	1000
	1 1 1 0	illegal
	1 1 1 1	illegal

11.3.2.1 Contact Interrupt Digital Input (W733 Modules) - Digital input and change of state information from contact interrupt modules is reported in a requester-provided circular buffer. The buffer consists of a 2-word header, followed by a data area in the following format:

1	driver index
2	user index
3	entry
4	entry
:	:

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

Whenever a change of state occurs in one or more contact points an interrupt is generated. The UDC11 driver gains control, determines whether the change of state is of interest (i.e., a contact closure and point closing (PCL) is set on the module), and then optionally makes an entry in the data area of the buffer, updates the index words and sets the trigger event flag of the connected task.

Each entry consists of five words in the following format:

<u>Word</u>	<u>Contents</u>
0	Entry existence indicator
1	Change of state (COS) indicator
2	Module data (current point values)
3	Module number (interrupting module)
4	Generic code (interrupting module)

The driver enters data in the location currently indicated by the driver index. This pointer can be considered as a FORTRAN index into the buffer, i.e., the first location of the buffer is associated with the index 1. The beginning of the data area is the location of the first entry (index 3). Entries are made in a circular fashion, starting at the beginning of the data area, filling in order of increasing memory address to the end of the data area, and then wrapping around from the end to the beginning of the data area. If, near the end of the data area, only part of the entry (e.g., the first two words) can fit, the remainder (the other three) is placed at the beginning of the data area.

It is expected that the connected task will maintain its own pointer (the user index) to the location in the buffer where it is next to retrieve contact interrupt data. When a task is triggered by the driver, it should process data in the buffer starting at the location indicated by its pointer and continuing in a circular fashion until the two pointers are equal or a zero entry existence indicator is encountered. Equality of pointers means that the connected task has retrieved all the contact interrupt information that the driver has entered into the buffer.

The entry existence indicator is set nonzero when a buffer entry is made. When a requester has removed or processed an entry, he must clear the existence indicator in order to free the buffer entry position.

If data input occurs in a burst sufficient to overrun the buffer, data are discarded and a count of data overruns is incremented. The nonzero entry existence indicator also serves as an overrun indicator. A positive value (+1) indicates no overruns between entries; a negative value is the two's complement of the number of times data have been discarded between entries.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

The module number indicates a module on which a change of state in the direction of interest has been recognized for one or more discrete points. The direction of the change may be from 0 to 1 or 1 to 0, depending on the PCL (point closing) and POP (point opening) module jumpers. The change of state (COS) indicator specifies which point or points of the module have changed state.

The bit position of an on-bit in the COS indicator provides the low-order bits (3-0) of a point number and the module number provides the high order bits (15-4). The module data indicates the logical value (polarity) of each point in the module at the time of the interrupt.

Contact interrupt data can be reported to only one task. The functions IO.CCI and IO.DCI in Table 11-2 are provided to enable a task to connect and disconnect from contact interrupts. If the connection is successful, the second word of the I/O status block contains the number of words passed per interrupt in the low-order byte and the initial FORTRAN index to the beginning of the data area in the high-order byte.

11.3.2.2 Timer (W734 I/O Counter Modules) - A timer (I/O counter) module is a clock that is initialized (loaded), counts up or down, and then causes an interrupt. The UDC11 driver treats such modules in a way similar to that in which it handles contact interrupts. The requester provides a circular buffer similar to that for contact interrupts. Each entry consists of four words in the following format:

<u>Word</u>	<u>Contents</u>
0	Entry existence indicator
1	Module data (current value)
2	Module number (interrupting module)
3	Generic code (interrupting module)

The IO.CTI function in Table 11-2 enables a task to connect to timer interrupts. The table of initial/reset values is used to initially load the timers and to reload them on interrupt (overflow). The table contains one word for each timer module. The contents of the first word is used to load the first module, and so forth. If a timer has a nonzero value when it interrupts, it is not reloaded, so that self-clocking modules and modules that interrupt on half count can continue counting from the initial value.

The IO.DTI function in Table 11-2 disconnects a task from timer interrupts, and the IO.ITI function provides the capability to initialize a single timer.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

11.3.2.3 Latching Digital Output (M685, M803, and M805 Modules) - Each module has 16 latching digital output points. The IO.MLO function in Table 11-2 opens or closes a set of up to 16 points. Bit n of the mask and data pattern corresponds to the point $opn + n$. If a bit in the mask is set, the corresponding point is opened or closed, depending on whether the corresponding bit in the data pattern is clear or set. If a bit in the mask is clear, the corresponding point remains unaltered.

11.3.2.4 Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADU01 Module) - Each ADU01 module has eight analog input channels. The IO.RBC function in Table 11-2 initiates A/D conversions on multiple ADU01 input channels. Restrictions on maximum sampling rates are the same as defined for the AFC11 in Chapter 10.

11.4 DIRECT ACCESS

Section 11.1.2 describes UDC11 functions that may be performed by referencing a module through its physical address in the I/O page. Under RSX-11M such access is accomplished by one of the following methods:

1. A privileged task or any task running in an unmapped system has unrestricted access to the I/O page and may therefore access each module by absolute address.
2. Using the Task Builder, a task may link to a global common area whose physical address limits span a set of locations in the I/O page. This method applies to either a mapped or unmapped system.

The latter method allows a task to be transported to any other system simply by relinking. Further, in a mapped system the memory management hardware will abort all references to device registers outside the physical address limits of the common block.

The operations required to implement each method may be summarized as follows:

1. Unrestricted access to the I/O page
 - a. An object module is created which defines the UDC11 configuration through a list of absolute global addresses and addressing limits for each module type.
 - b. The object module is included in the system library file.
 - c. A task is created containing the appropriate global references. Such references are resolved when the task builder automatically searches the system library file.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

Steps a and b are executed once. Step c is performed each time a task is created that references the UDC11.

2. Access to the I/O page through a Global Common Block:
 - a. An object module is created which defines the UDC11 configuration through a list of relocatable global addresses and addressing limits for each module type.
 - b. The object module is linked, using the Task Builder, to create an image of the Global Common block on disk.
 - c. The INSTALL MCR command is used to make the Global Common Block resident in memory.
 - d. A task is created containing the appropriate global references. Such references are resolved by directing the Task Builder to link the Task to the common block.

The following paragraphs describe each step in detail.

11.4.1 Defining the UDC11 Configuration

The source module UDCOM.MAC*, when assembled with the proper prefix file, provides global definitions for the following parameters:

- . The starting address of each module type.
- . The highest point number within a given module type.
- . The highest module number within a given module type.

The last two parameters are absolute quantities that may be used to prevent a task from referencing a module that is non-existent or out of limits.

By means of conditional assembly the list of addresses may be created as absolute symbols defining locations in the I/O page or as symbols within a relocatable program section to be used when building and linking to the UDC11 Global Common area.

11.4.1.1 Assembly Procedure for UDCOM.MAC - UDCOM.MAC is assembled with the RSX-11M configuration parameters contained in the file RSXMC.MAC.

To create relocatable module addresses either the parameter 'U\$\$DCM' or 'M\$\$MGE' must be defined. 'M\$\$MGE' will be included in RSXMC.MAC

* This module resides on the RK05 cartridge of the RSX-11M distribution bit labeled SOURCE MASTER. It is under UIC [11,10].

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

if memory management was specified when the system was generated. If not, the user should edit the file to include the following definition:

```
U$$DCM=0
```

The file may then be assembled using the MCR command:

```
>MAC UDCOM,UDLST=[11,10]RSXMC,UDCOM
```

This command invokes the MACRO-11 assembler which processes the input files RSXMC.MAC and UDCOM.MAC to create UDCOM.OBJ and UDLST.LST.

To create absolute module addresses, both of the above parameters must be undefined. Edit RSXMC.MAC, if necessary, to remove definitions and then invoke the MACRO-11 assembler with the following MCR command:

```
>MAC UDCDF,UDLST=[11,10]RSXMC,UDCOM
```

In this sequence the files UDCDF.OBJ and UDLST.LST are created from the specified source modules. UDCDF.OBJ contains the module addresses in absolute form.

11.4.1.2 Symbols Defined by UDCOM.MAC - This section lists the symbolic definitions created by UDCOM.MAC.

The following symbols define the absolute or relocatable address of the first module of a given type:

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Module Type</u>
\$.ADM	Analog input
\$.AOM	Analog output
\$.CIM	Contact interrupt
\$.CSM	Contact sense input
\$.LTM	Latching digital output
\$.SSM	Single-shot digital output
\$.TIM	Timer (I/O counter)

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

The addresses in relocatable form are defined in a program section named 'UDCOM' having the attributes:

REL - relocatable
OVR - overlaid
I - instruction
GBL - global scope

Note that these attributes correspond to those attached to a named common block within a Fortran program.

In either the absolute or relocatable case, individual modules are referenced by the corresponding symbolic address plus a relative module index.

The following symbols define the highest digital point within a module type:

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Module Type</u>
P\$.CIM	Contact interrupt
P\$.CSM	Contact sense input
P\$.LTM	Latching digital output
P\$.SSM	Single-shot digital output

The highest point number is defined relative to the first point on the first module of a specific type.

For example if two contact interrupt modules are installed, the symbol 'P\$.CIM' will have an octal value of 37.

The following symbols define the highest module number within a given module type.

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Module Type</u>
M\$.ADM	Analog input
M\$.AOM	Analog output
M\$.CIM	Contact interrupt
M\$.CSM	Contact sense input
M\$.LTM	Latching digital output
M\$.SSM	Single-shot digital output
M\$.TIM	Timer (I/O counter)

The highest module number is defined relative to the first module of a given type. Thus, based on the previous example, M\$.CIM will have a value of 1.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

11.4.2 Including UDC11 Symbolic Definitions in the System Object Module Library

As described in 11.4, a task having unrestricted access to the I/O page may reference a UDC11 module by absolute address. The object module UDCDF contains symbolic definitions of absolute module addresses and may be included in the System Object Module Library:

```
SY:[1,1]SYSLIB.OLB
```

The Task Builder automatically searches this file to resolve any undefined globals remaining after all input files have been processed.

The following example illustrates the procedure for including the file 'UDCDF.OBJ' in the library.

```
>SET /UIC=[1,1]
>LBR SYSLIB/IN=[200,200]UDCDF
```

The SET MCR command is issued to establish the current UIC as [1,1]. Next, the RSX11M Librarian is invoked and instructed, through the use of the /IN switch to include the object module UDCDF.OBJ in the file SYSLIB.OLB.

11.4.3 Referencing the UDC11 through a Global Common Block

The following sections define the procedure for creating a Global Common block in the I/O PAGE, making the block resident in memory, and creating a task which references UDC11 modules within the block. Examples are given for both mapped and unmapped systems.

11.4.3.1 Creating a Global Common Block - The following sequence illustrates the use of the object file UDCOM.OBJ to create a disk image of the global common area in a mapped system.

```
>SET /UIC=[1,1]
>TKB
TKB>UDCOM/MM,LP: ,SY:UDCOM/PI/-HD=[200,200]UDCOM
TKB>/
ENTER OPTIONS:
TKB>STACK=0
TKB>/
```

In the above example, a current UIC of [1,1] is established and the Task Builder is initiated. The initial input line to the Task Builder specifies the following files:

- . A core image output file to be named UDCOM.TSK
- . A memory map output to the line printer

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

A symbol table file to be named UDCOM.STB

All files reside on SY: under UIC [1,1]. The single input file, UDCOM.OBJ containing the UDC11 address definitions as relocatable values, constitutes the input.

The switches specified for the output files convey the following information to the Task Builder:

- /MM indicates that the core image of the common block will reside on a system with Memory Management.
- /PI indicates that the core image is position independent; that is the virtual address of the common block may appear on any 4K boundary within a task's address space.
- /-HD indicates that the core image will not contain a header. A header is only required for a core image file that is to be installed and executed as a task.

A single line of option input must be entered to eliminate the default memory allocation for the stack area.

The following sequence illustrates the corresponding procedure for an unmapped system:

```
>SET /UIC=[1,1]
>TKB
TKB>UDCOM/-MM,LP:,,SY:UDCOM/PI/-HD=[200,200]UDCOM
TKB>/
ENTER OPTIONS:
TKB>STACK=0
TKB>PAR=UDCOM:171000:1000
TKB>/
```

Again the task builder is requested to produce a core image and symbol table file under the UIC [1,1] and a map file on the line printer from the input file UDCOM.OBJ. The output file switches convey the following information:

- /-MM indicates that the core image of the common block will reside on an unmapped system.
- /PI Indicates that the core image is position independent. In an unmapped system the core image is fixed in the same address space for all tasks; however, the global symbols defined in the symbol table file retain the relocatable attribute.
- /-HD indicates that a core image without a header is to be created.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

The PAR option specifies the base and length of the common area to coincide with the standard UDC11 addresses in the I/O page. All references to the common block by tasks will be resolved within this region.

11.4.3.2 Making the Common Block Resident - The following SET command creates a UDC11 common block residing in the I/O page for a mapped system:

```
>SET /MAIN=UDCOM:7710:10:DEV
```

The corresponding command in an unmapped system is:

```
>SET /MAIN=UDCOM:1710:10:DEV
```

The preceding sequence specifies the allocation of a common block in the I/O page whose physical address limits correspond to the UDC11 standard locations. Note that the address bounds and length are defined in units of 32 words.

11.4.3.3 Linking a Task to the UDC11 Common Block - A task may access UDC11 modules by linking to the common block as follows:

```
TKB>TASK,LP:=TASK.OBJ  
TKB>/  
ENTER OPTIONS:  
>TKB COMMON=UDCOM:RW  
TKB>/
```

The above sequence is valid for either a mapped or unmapped system. In both cases the Task Builder will link the task to the common block by relocating the Global symbol definitions contained in UDCOM.STB. If memory management is present, the Executive will map the appropriate physical locations into the tasks virtual addressing space when the task is made active.

11.5 FORTRAN INTERFACE

A collection of FORTRAN-callable subroutines provide FORTRAN programs access to the UDC11. These are described in this section. All are reentrant and may be placed in a resident library.

Instead of using the FORTRAN-callable subroutines described in this section, a FORTRAN program may use the global common feature described in section 11.4 to reference UDC11 modules directly in the I/O page, as shown in the following example:

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

```
C
C      UDC11 GLOBAL COMMON
C
C      COMMON /UDCOM/ ICSM(10),IAO(10)
C
C      READ CONTACT SENSE MODULE 1 DIRECTLY
C
C      ICS=ICSM(1)
```

Note that the position of each module type must correspond to the sequence in which storage is allocated in the common statements.

11.5.1 Synchronous and Asynchronous Process Control I/O

The ISA standard provides for synchronous and asynchronous process I/O. Synchronous I/O is indicated by appending a "W" to the name of the subroutine (e.g., AO/AOW). But due to the fact that nearly all UDC11 I/O operations are performed immediately, in most cases the "W" form of the call is retained only for compatibility and has no meaning under RSX-11M. In the case of A/D input, however, the "W" form is significant: the synchronous call suspends task execution until input is complete. If the asynchronous form is used, execution continues and the calling program must periodically test the status word for completion.

11.5.2 The isb Status Array

The isb (I/O status block) parameter is a 2-word integer array that contains the status of the FORTRAN call, in accordance with ISA convention. This array serves two purposes:

1. It is the 2-word I/O status block to which the driver returns an I/O status code on completion of an I/O operation.
2. The first word of isb receives a status code from the FORTRAN interface in ISA-compatible format, with the exception of the I/O pending condition, which is indicated by a status of zero. The ISA standard code for this condition is +2.

The meaning of the contents of isb varies, depending on the FORTRAN call that has been executed, but Table 11-4 lists certain general principles that apply. The section describing each subroutine gives more details.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

Table 11-4
Contents of First Word of isb

<u>Contents</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
isb(1) = 0	Operation pending; I/O in progress
isb(1) = 1	Successful completion
isb(1) = 3	Interface subroutine unable to generate QIO directive or number of points requested is zero
$3 < \text{isb}(1) \leq 300$	QIO directive rejected and actual error code = $-(\text{isb}(1) - 3)$
isb(1) > 300	Driver rejected request and actual error code = $-(\text{isb}(1) - 300)$

In some cases, the values or states of points being read, pulsed, or latched are returned to isb word 2.

FORTRAN interface subroutines depend on asynchronous system traps to set their status. Thus, if the trap mechanism is disabled, proper status cannot be set.

For direct access calls (indicated in Table 11-5 below), errors are detected and returned by the FORTRAN interface subroutine itself, rather than the driver. Although the use of a two-word status block is therefore unnecessary, these errors are returned in standard format to retain compatibility with RSX-11D. Errors of this type that may be returned are:

isb(1) = 3	Number of points requested is zero
isb(1) = value of IE.MOD	Invalid UDC11 module

11.5.3 FORTRAN Subroutine Summary

Table 11-5 lists the FORTRAN interface subroutines supported for the UDC11 under RSX-11M. (D) indicates a direct access call and the optional logical unit number for such a call may be specified to retain compatibility with RSX-11D, but this specification is ignored.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

Table 11-5
FORTRAN Interface Subroutines for the UDC11

<u>Subroutine</u>	<u>Function</u>
AIRD/AIRDW	Perform input of analog data in random sequence
AISQ/AISQW	Read a series of sequential analog input channels
AO/AOW	Perform analog output on several channels (D)
ASUDLN	Assign a LUN to UD0:
CTDI	Connect a circular buffer to receive contact interrupt data
CTTI	Connect a circular buffer to receive timer interrupt data
DFDI	Disconnect a buffer from contact interrupts
DFTI	Disconnect a buffer from timer interrupts
DI/DIW	Read several 16-point contact sense fields (D)
DOL/DOLW	Latch or unlatch several 16-point fields
DOM/DOMW	Pulse several 16-point fields (D)
RCIPT	Read the state of a single contact interrupt point (D)
RDDI	Read the contents of a contact interrupt circular buffer, one point for each call
RDTI	Read the contents of a timer interrupt circular buffer, one entry for each call
RSTI	Read a single timer module (D)
SCTI	Set a timer module to an initial value

The following subsections briefly describe the function and format of each FORTRAN subroutine call. Note the use of ASUDLN to specify a default logical unit number. Also consider the numbering conventions described in 11.7.2.

The following FORTRAN functions do not perform I/O directly, but facilitate conversions between BCD and binary.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

Convert four BCD digits to a binary number:

IBIN = KBCD2B(IBCD)

Convert a binary number to four BCD digits:

IBCD = KB2BCD(IBIN)

11.5.4 AIRD/AIRDW: Performing Input of Analog Data in Random Sequence

The ISA standard AIRD/AIRDW FORTRAN subroutines input analog data in random sequence. These calls are issued as follows:

```
CALL      AIRD
          (inm,icont,idata,[isb],lun)
          AIRDW
```

where: inm specifies the number of analog input channels.

icont is an integer array containing terminal connection data - channel number (right-justified in bits 0-11) and gain (bits 12-15), as shown in Table 11-3.

idata is an integer array to receive the converted values.

isb is a two-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

lun is the logical unit number.

NOTE

lun is a required parameter

The isb array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2. If inm = 0, then isb(1) = 3. The contents of idata are undefined if an error occurs.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

11.5.5 AISQ/AISQW: Reading Sequential Analog Input Channels

The ISA standard AISQ/AISQW FORTRAN subroutines read a series of sequential analog input channels. These calls are issued as follows:

$$\text{CALL } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{AISQ} \\ \text{AISQW} \end{array} \right\} (\text{inm}, \text{icont}, \text{idata}, [\text{isb}], \text{lun})$$

where: **inm** specifies the number of analog input channels.

icont is an integer array containing terminal connection data - channel number (right-justified in bits 0-11) and gain (bits 12-15), as shown in Table 11-3.

idata is an integer array to receive the converted values.

isb is a two-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

lun is the logical unit number.

NOTE

lun is a required parameter

For sequential analog input, channel number is computed in steps of one, beginning with the value specified in the first element of **icont**. The channel number field is ignored in all other elements of the array.

The gain used for each conversion is taken from the respective element in **icont**. Thus, even though the channel number is ignored in all but the first element of **icont**, the gain must be specified for each conversion to be performed.

The **isb** array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2. If **inm** = 0, then **isb**(1) = 3. The contents of **idata** are undefined if an error occurs.

11.5.6 AO/AOW: Performing Analog Output

The ISA standard AO/AOW FORTRAN subroutines initiate analog output on several channels. These calls are issued as follows:

$$\text{CALL } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{AO} \\ \text{AOW} \end{array} \right\} (\text{inm}, \text{icont}, \text{idata}, [\text{isb}], [\text{lun}])$$

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

where: `inm` specifies the number of analog output channels.
`icont` is an integer array containing the channel numbers.
`idata` is an integer array containing the output voltage settings, in the range 0-1023.
`isb` is a two-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.
`lun` is the logical unit number (ignored if present).

The `isb` array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2

11.5.7 ASUDLN: Assigning a LUN to UD0:

The ASUDLN FORTRAN subroutine assigns the specified LUN to UD0: and defines it as the default logical unit number to be used whenever a LUN specification is omitted from a UDC11 subroutine call. It is issued as follows:

```
CALL ASUDLN (lun,[isw])
```

where: `lun` is the logical unit number to be assigned to UD0: and defined as the default unit.
`isw` is an integer variable to which the result of the ASSIGN LUN system directive is returned.

11.5.8 CTDI: Connecting to Contact Interrupts

The CTDI FORTRAN subroutine connects a task to contact interrupts and specifies a circular buffer to receive contact interrupt data. The length of this buffer can be computed by considering the following:

- . Rate at which contact module interrupts occur
- . Number of modules that can interrupt simultaneously
- . Rate at which the circular buffer is emptied

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

The UDC11 driver generates a five-word entry for each contact interrupt and the interface subroutine itself requires 10 words of additional storage. Thus the *isz* parameter, described below, can be computed as follows:

$$isz = (10 + 5 * n)$$

where *n* is the number of entries in the buffer and *isz* is expressed in words.

The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL CTDI (ibuf,isz,iev,[isb],[lun])
```

where: *ibuf* is an integer array that is to receive contact interrupt data.

isz is the length of the array in words, with a minimum size of 15.

iev is the trigger event flag number. The specified event flag is set whenever the driver inserts an entry in the data buffer.

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

lun is the logical unit number.

The *isb* array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2.

11.5.9 CTTI: Connecting to Timer Interrupts

The CTTI FORTRAN subroutine connects a task to timer interrupts and specifies a circular buffer to receive timer interrupt data. The length of this buffer can be computed by considering the following:

- . Rate at which timer module interrupts occur
- . Number of modules that can interrupt simultaneously
- . Rate at which the circular buffer is emptied

The UDC11 driver generates a four-word entry for each timer interrupt and the interface subroutine itself requires 8 words of additional storage. Thus the *isz* parameter, described below, can be computed as follows:

$$isz = (8 + 4 * n)$$

where *n* is the number of entries in the buffer and *isz* is expressed in words.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

When a timer module interrupt occurs, the driver resets the count to an initial value, normally that specified in *iv*. The initial value for a specific module can be modified by calling the *SCTI* subroutine (see section 11.5.19).

The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL CTTI (ibuf,isz,iev,iv,[isb],[lun])
```

where: *ibuf* is an integer array that is to receive timer interrupt data.

isz is the length of the array in words, with a minimum size of 12.

iev is a trigger event flag number. The specified event flag is set whenever the driver inserts an entry in the data buffer.

iv is an integer array which contains the initial timer module values, with one entry for each timer module, where entry *n* corresponds to timer module number *n*-1.

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

lun is the logical unit number.

The *isb* array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2.

11.5.10 DFDI: Disconnecting from Contact Interrupts

The *DFDI* FORTRAN subroutine disconnects a task from contact interrupts. It is issued as follows:

```
CALL DFDI ([isb],[lun])
```

where: *isb* is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

lun is the logical unit number.

The *isb* array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

11.5.11 DFTI: Disconnecting from Timer Interrupts

The DFTI FORTRAN subroutine disconnects a task from timer interrupts. It is issued as follows:

```
CALL DFTI ([isb],[lun])
```

where: isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

lun is the logical unit number.

The isb array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2

11.5.12 DI/DIW: Reading Several Contact Sense Fields

The ISA standard DI/DIW FORTRAN subroutines read several 16-point contact sense fields. These calls are issued as follows:

```
CALL { DI } (inm,icont,idata,isb,[lun])  
     { DIW }
```

where: inm specifies the number of fields to be read.

icont is an integer array containing the initial point number of each field to be read.

idata is an integer array that is to receive the input data, 16 bits of contact data for each field read.

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

lun is the logical unit number (ignored if present).

The isb array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

11.5.13 DOL/DOLW: Latching or Unlatching Several Fields

The ISA standard DOL/DOLW FORTRAN subroutines latch or unlatch one or more 16-point fields. These calls are issued as follows:

$$\text{CALL} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{DOL} \\ \text{DOLW} \end{array} \right\} (\text{inm}, \text{icont}, \text{idata}, \text{imsk}, [\text{isb}], [\text{lun}])$$

where: **inm** specifies the number of fields to be latched or unlatched.

icont is an integer array containing the initial point number of each 16-point field.

idata is an integer array which specifies the points to be latched or unlatched; bit *n* of *idata* corresponds to point number *icont* + *n*; if the corresponding bit in *imsk* is set, the bit is changed; a bit value of 1 indicates latching, and 0 unlatching; each entry in the array specifies a string of 16 points.

imsk is an integer array in which bits are set to indicate points whose states are to be changed in the corresponding *idata* bits; each entry in the array specifies a 16-bit mask word.

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

lun is the logical unit number.

The *isb* array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2.

11.5.14 DOM/DOMW: Pulsing Several Fields

The ISA standard DOM/DOMW FORTRAN subroutines pulse several 16-bit fields (one-shot digital output points). These calls are issued as follows:

$$\text{CALL} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{DOM} \\ \text{DOMW} \end{array} \right\} (\text{inm}, \text{icont}, \text{idata}, [\text{idx}], [\text{isb}], [\text{lun}])$$

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

where: `inm` specifies the number of fields to be pulsed.

`icont` is an integer array containing the initial point number of each 16-point field.

`idata` is an integer array which specifies the points to be pulsed; bit `n` of `idata` corresponds to point number `icont + n`.

`idx` is a dummy argument retained for compatibility with existing ISA standard FORTRAN process control calls.

`isb` is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

`lun` is the logical unit number (ignored if present).

The `isb` array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2.

11.5.15 RCIPT: Reading a Contact Interrupt Point

The RCIPT FORTRAN subroutine reads the state of a single contact interrupt point. It is issued as follows:

```
CALL RCIPT (ipt,isb,[lun])
```

where: `ipt` is the number of the point to be read; points are numbered sequentially from 0, the first point on the first contact interrupt module.

`isb` is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

`lun` is the logical unit number (ignored if present).

The `isb` array has the same basic meaning defined in section 11.5.2. However, `isb` word 2 is set to one of the following values, representing the state of the point:

Setting	Meaning
<code>.FALSE. (0)</code>	Point is open
<code>.TRUE. (-1)</code>	Point is closed

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

11.5.16 RDDI: Reading Contact Interrupt Data From a Circular Buffer

The RDDI FORTRAN subroutine reads contact interrupt data from a circular buffer that was specified in a CTDI call (see 11.5.8 above). It does no actual input or output, but rather performs a point-by-point scan of an interrupt entry in the buffer, returning the state of each point as a logical value. The trigger event flag which was specified in the CTDI call is also cleared.

On the initial call to RDDI the module number and data of the next interrupt entry are read from the circular buffer and stored for subsequent reference. The subroutine then sets the current data bit number n to zero, examines the state of data bit n , and converts bit n to a point number via the following formula:

$$\text{ipt} = \text{module number} * 16 + n$$

On each subsequent call, n is incremented by one and then data bit n is examined in the stored module data. When n reaches 16, it is reset to zero and an attempt is made to read the next interrupt entry from the circular buffer. If a valid entry is not found, ipt is set negative and ict (if specified) is either assigned a value of zero or an overrun count maintained by the UDC11 driver. If ict is zero, no further entries remain. A nonzero value indicates that the driver received more data than could be stored in the buffer, and ict represents the number of entries that were discarded.

The RDDI call is issued as follows:

```
CALL RDDI (ipt,ival,[ict])
```

where: ipt is a variable to which the digital input point number is returned; it may be set as follows:

- . $\text{ipt} < 0$ if no valid entry is found (i.e., no interrupt data currently in buffer)
- . $\text{ipt} \geq 0$ if the value indicated is a point number; the state is returned to ival

ival is a variable to which the state of the point is returned; it may be set as follows:

- . .FALSE. (0) if the point is open
- . .TRUE. (-1) if the point is closed

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

ict is a variable to which the overrun count may be returned; a nonzero positive count indicates that the driver was unable to store the number of entries indicated.

11.5.17 RDTI: Reading Timer Interrupt Data From a Circular Buffer

The RDTI FORTRAN subroutine reads timer interrupt data from a circular buffer that was specified in a CTTI call (see 11.5.9 above). It does no actual input or output, but rather performs a scan of each entry in the buffer, returning the timer value for each call. The trigger event flag which was specified in the CTTI call is also cleared.

When a timer module interrupt occurs, the UDC11 driver resets the count to an initial value, usually that specified in the iv array on the CTTI call. The initial value can be modified for a specific module by calling the subroutine SCTI (see section 11.5.19).

The RDTI call is issued as follows:

```
CALL RDTI (imod,itm,[ivvn])
```

where: imod is a variable to which the module number is returned; it may be set as follows:

- . imod < 0 if no valid entry is found (i.e., no interrupt data currently in buffer)
- . imod ≥ 0 if the entry is valid, indicating a module number; the value of the timer module is returned in itm

itm is a variable to which the timer value is returned.

ivvn is a variable to which the overrun count may be returned; a nonzero positive count indicates that the driver was unable to store the number of values indicated.

11.5.18 RSTI: Reading a Timer Module

The RSTI FORTRAN subroutine reads a single timer module. It is issued as follows:

```
CALL RSTI (imod,isb,[lun])
```

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

where: imod is the module number of the timer to be read.
isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.
lun is the logical unit number (ignored if present).

The isb array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2.

11.5.19 SCTI: Initializing a Timer Module

The SCTI FORTRAN subroutine sets a timer module to an initial value. It is issued as follows:

```
CALL SCTI (imod,ival,[isb],[lun])
```

where: imod is the module number of the timer to be set.
ival is the initial timer value.
isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.
lun is the logical unit number.

The isb array has the standard meaning defined in section 11.5.2.

11.6 STATUS RETURNS

Table 11-6 lists the error and status conditions that are returned by the UDC11 driver described in this chapter:

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

Table 11-6
UDC11 Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	<p>Successful completion</p> <p>The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of samples completed or converted.</p>
IS.PND	<p>I/O request pending</p> <p>The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been executed. The I/O status block is filled with zeros.</p>
IE.ABO	<p>Operation aborted</p> <p>The specified I/O operation was cancelled via IO.KIL while still in the I/O queue.</p>
IE.BAD	<p>Bad parameter</p> <p>An illegal specification was supplied for one or more of the device-dependent QIO parameters (words 6-11). For the UDC11, this code indicates an illegal channel number or gain code for the ADU01.</p>
IE.BYT	<p>Byte-aligned buffer specified</p> <p>Byte alignment was specified for a buffer but only word alignment is legal for the UDC11. Alternately, the length of a buffer was not an even number of bytes.</p>
IE.CON	<p>Connect error</p> <p>The task attempted to connect to contact or timer interrupts, but the interrupt was already connected to another task. Only one task can be connected to a timer or contact interrupt. Alternately a task which was not connected attempted to disconnect from contact or timer interrupts.</p>
IE.DNR	<p>Device not ready</p> <p>The physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not ready to perform the desired I/O operation. For the ADU01, this code is returned if an interrupt timeout occurred or the power failed.</p>

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

Table 11-6 (Cont.)
UDC11 Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.IEF	Invalid event flag number The trigger event flag number specified in a connect function was not in the range 1 to 64.
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was included in an I/O request that is illegal for the UDC11. The function may also refer to a UDC11 feature which was not specified at system generation.
IE.MOD	Invalid UDC11 module On latching output, the user specified a starting point number which was not legal (defined at system generation) or was not evenly divisible by 16.
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.PRI	Privilege violation The task which issued the request was not privileged to execute that request. For the UDC11, this code indicates that a checkpointable task attempted to connect to timer or contact interrupts.
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The specified control, data, or interrupt buffer was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately, the interrupt buffer was too small for a single data entry (6 words for timer interrupts and 7 words for contact interrupts) or a byte count of zero was specified.

FORTTRAN interface values for these status returns are presented in section 11.6.1.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

11.6.1 FORTRAN Interface Values

The values listed in Table 11-7 are returned in FORTRAN subroutine calls.

Table 11-7
FORTRAN Interface Values

<u>Status Return</u>	<u>FORTRAN Value</u>
IS.SUC	+01
IS.PND	+00
IE.ABO	+315
IE.ADP	+101
IE.BAD	+301
IE.BYT	+319
IE.DAO	+313
IE.DNR	+303
IE.IEF	+100
IE.IFC	+302
IE.ILU	+99
IE.NOD	+323
IE.ONP	+305
IE.PRI	+316
IE.RSU	+317
IE.SDP	+102
IE.SPC	+306
IE.ULN	+08
IE.UPN	+04

11.7 PROGRAMMING HINTS

This section contains information on important programming considerations relevant to users of the UDC11 driver described in this chapter.

11.7.1 Checkpointable Tasks

Since checkpointable tasks are not allowed to have more than one outstanding I/O request, a task that issues a request to connect to timer or contact interrupts must not be checkpointable.

11.7.2 Numbering Conventions

Numbering is relative. Module numbers start at 0, beginning with the first module of a given type.

CHAPTER 11. UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

Channel numbers also start at 0, with channel 0 as the first channel on the first module of a given type. For instance, channel 10 (octal) is the first channel on the second analog output module.

Point numbers start at 0, with point 0 as the first point on the first module of a given type. For instance, point 20 (octal) is the first point of the second contact sense module (i.e., relative module number 1).

11.7.3 Use of CTDI and RDDI for Processing Circular Buffer Entries

Circular buffer entries should be processed in the following sequence.

1. Execute a WAITFOR system directive predicated on the trigger event flag specified in the CTDI subroutine call.
2. Repeatedly call RDDI until all valid points have been read and ipt is negative.
3. Perform any other processing and return to step 1.

CHAPTER 12

LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.1 INTRODUCTION

The LPS11 Laboratory Peripheral System is a modular, real-time sub-system that includes the following:

- . 12 bit analog-to-digital converter, with sample and hold circuitry and an eight-channel multiplexer
- . Programmable real-time clock for measuring and counting intervals or events
- . Display controller to display data in a 4096 by 4096 dot matrix
- . Digital input/output option (16 digital points and programmable relays)

Built in a compact size and designed for easy interfacing with outside instrumentation, the LPS11 is suited to a variety of applications, including biomedical research, analytical instrumentation, data collection and reduction, monitoring, data logging, industrial testing, engineering, and technical education.

At system generation, the user can specify the following:

- . Number of A/D channels
- . Whether the gain-ranging option (LPSAM-SG) is present and the polarity of each channel (uni- or bi-polar)
- . Whether the external D/A option (LPSVC and LPSDA) is present, and if so, the number of D/A channels
- . Clock preset value

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.2 GET LUN INFORMATION MACRO

If a GET LUN INFORMATION system directive is issued for a LUN associated with an LPS11, word 2 (the first characteristics word) contains all zeros, words 3 and 4 are undefined, and word 5 contains a 16-bit buffer preset value that controls the rate of LPS11 clock interrupts, as explained in section 12.6.1.

12.3 QIO MACRO

This section summarizes standard and device-specific QIO functions for the LPS11 driver.

12.3.1 Standard QIO Function

Table 12-1 lists the standard function of the QIO macro that is valid for the LPS11.

Table 12-1
Standard QIO Function for the LPS11

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.KIL,...	Cancel I/O requests
IO.KIL	IO.KIL cancels all queued and in progress I/O requests.

12.3.2 Device-Specific QIO Functions (Immediate)

Except for IO.STP (see section 12.3.4), all device-specific functions of the QIO macro that are valid for the LPS11 are either immediate or synchronous. Each immediate function performs a complete operation, whereas each synchronous function simply initiates an operation. Table 12-2 lists the immediate functions.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

Table 12-2
Device-Specific QIO Functions for the LPS11 (Immediate)

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.LED,....,<int,num>	Display number in LED lights
QIO\$C IO.REL,....,<rel,pol>	Latch output relay
QIO\$C IO.SDI,....,<mask>	Read digital input register
QIO\$C IO.SDO,....,<mask,data>	Write digital output register

where: int is the 16-bit signed binary integer to display.
num is the LED digit number where the decimal point is to be placed.
rel is the relay number (zero or one).
pol is the polarity (zero for open, nonzero for closed).
mask is the mask word.
data is the data word.

The following subsections describe the functions listed above.

12.3.2.1 IO.LED - This function displays a 16-bit signed binary integer in the light-emitting diode (LED) lights. The number is displayed with a leading blank (positive number) or minus sign (negative number) followed by five nonzero-suppressed decimal digits that represent the magnitude of the number. LED digits are numbered from right to left, starting at 1.

The number may be displayed with or without a decimal point. If the parameter num is a number from 1 to 5, then the corresponding LED digit is displayed with a decimal point to the right of the digit. If the LED digit number is not a number from 1 to 5, then no decimal point is displayed.

12.3.2.2 IO.REL - This function opens or closes the programmable relays in the digital I/O status register. Approximately 300 milliseconds are required to open or close a relay. The driver imposes no delays when executing this function. Thus it is the responsibility of the user to insure that adequate time has elapsed between the opening and closing of a relay.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.3.2.3 IO.SDI - This function reads data qualified by a mask word from the digital input register. The mask word contains a 1 in each bit position from which data is to be read. All other bits are zero-filled and the resulting value is returned in the second I/O status word.

The operation performed is:

RETURN VALUE=MASK.AND.INPUT REGISTER

12.3.2.4 IO.SDO - This function writes data qualified by a mask word into the digital output register. The mask word contains a 1 in each bit position that is to be written. The data word specifies the data to be written in corresponding bit positions.

The operation performed is:

NEW REGISTER=<MASK.AND.DATA>.OR.<<.NOT.MASK>.AND.OLD REGISTER>

12.3.3 Device-Specific QIO Functions (Synchronous)

Table 12-3 lists the synchronous, device-specific functions of the QIO macro that are valid for the LPS11.

Table 12-3
Device-Specific QIO Functions for the LPS11 (Synchronous)

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.ADS, ..., <stadd, size, pnt, ticks, bufs, chna>	Initiate A/D sampling
QIO\$C IO.HIS, ..., <stadd, size, pnt, ticks, bufs>	Initiate histogram sampling
QIO\$C IO.MDA, ..., <stadd, size, pnt, ticks, bufs, chnd>	Initiate D/A output
QIO\$C IO.MDI, ..., <stadd, size, pnt, ticks, bufs, mask>	Initiate digital input sampling
QIO\$C IO.MDO, ..., <stadd, size, pnt, ticks, bufs, mask>	Initiate digital output

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

where: **stadd** is the starting address of the data buffer (must be on a word boundary).

size is the data buffer size in bytes (must be greater than zero and a multiple of four bytes).

pnt is the digital point numbers (byte 0 - starting input/output point number; byte 1 - input point number to stop the function).

ticks is the number of LPS11 clock ticks between samples or data transfers, as appropriate.

bufs is the number of data buffers to transfer.

chna is the A/D conversion specification (byte 0 - starting A/D channel number, which must be in the range 0-63. If the gain ranging option is present the channel number must be in the range 0-15 and bits 4 and 5 specify the gain code. Byte 1 - number of consecutive A/D channels to be sampled, which must be in the range 1-64).

chnd is the D/A output channel specification (byte 0 - starting D/A channel number, which must be in the range 0-9; byte 1 - number of consecutive channels to output, which must be in the range 1-10).

mask is the mask word.

The following subsections describe the functions listed above.

12.3.3.1 IO.ADS - This function reads one or more A/D channels at precisely timed intervals, with or without auto gain-ranging. If two or more channels are specified, all are sampled at approximately the same time, once per interval. The auto gain-ranging algorithm causes a channel to be sampled at the highest gain at which saturation does not occur.

Sampling may be started when the request is dequeued or when a specified digital input point is set. A digital output point may optionally be set when sampling is started. Sampling may be terminated by a program request (IO.STP or IO.KILL), by the clearing of a digital input point, or by the collection of a specified number of buffers of data.

All input is double-buffered with respect to the user task. Each time a half buffer of data has been collected, the user task is notified (via the setting of an event flag) that data is available to be processed while the driver fills the other half of the buffer.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

The subfunction modifier bits are identical to those described in section 12.3.3.2; in addition, setting bit 3 to 1 means auto gain-ranging is requested. If bits 7 and 6 are both set to 1, the digital input point and digital output point number are assumed to be the same.

If auto gain-ranging is used, the LPSAM-SG hardware option must be present and specified at system generation. If the gain-ranging option is present and auto gain-ranging is not specified in bit 3 of the sub-function code, then bits 4 and 5 of the starting channel number specify the gain at which samples are to be converted. Gain codes are as follows:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Gain</u>
00	1
01	4
10	16
11	64

Data words written into the user buffer contain the converted value in bits 0-11 and the gain code, as shown below, in bits 12-15:

<u>Code</u>	<u>Gain</u>
0000	1
0001	4
0010	16
0011	64

If the LPSAM-SG option is present, then the band pass filter jumpers must not be clipped. Also, each channel must have been defined as uni- or bi-polar at system generation.

12.3.3.2 IO.HIS - This function measures the elapsed time between a series of events by means of Schmitt trigger one. Each time a sample is to be taken, a counter is incremented and Schmitt trigger one is tested. If it has fired, then the counter is written into the user buffer and reset to zero. Thus the data item returned to the user is the number of sample intervals between Schmitt trigger firings.

If the counter overflows before Schmitt trigger one fires, then a zero value is written into the user buffer. Sampling may be started and stopped as described in section 12.3.3.1. All input is double-buffered with respect to the user task.

The subfunction modifier bits appear below. A setting of 1 indicates the action listed in the right-hand column.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

<u>Bit</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
0-3	Unused
4	Stop on number of buffers
5	Stop on digital input point clear
6	Set digital output point at start of operation
7	Start on digital input point set (a zero specification means start immediately)

12.3.3.3 IO.MDA - This function writes data into one or more external D/A converters at precisely timed intervals. If two or more channels are specified, all are written at approximately the same time, once per interval. Output may be started or stopped as described in section 12.3.3.1. All output is double-buffered with respect to the user task.

D/A converters 0 and 1 correspond to the X and Y registers of the LPSVC option. D/A converters 2 through 9 correspond to the LPSDA external D/A option.

The subfunction modifier bits are identical to those described in section 12.3.3.2.

12.3.3.4 IO.MDI - This function provides the capability to read data qualified by a mask word from the digital input register at precisely timed intervals. Sampling may be started and stopped as described in section 12.3.3.1. All input is double-buffered with respect to the user task.

The mask word contains a 1 in each bit position from which data is to be read. All other bits are zero.

The subfunction modifier bits are identical to those described in section 12.3.3.2.

12.3.3.5 IO.MDO - This function writes data qualified by a mask word into the digital output register at precisely timed intervals. Output may be started and stopped as described in section 12.3.3.1. All output is double-buffered with respect to the user task.

The subfunction modifier bits are identical to those described in section 12.3.3.2.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.3.4 Device-Specific QIO Function (IO.STP)

Table 12-4 lists the device-specific IO.STP function of the QIO macro, which is valid for the LPS11.

Table 12-4
Device-Specific QIO Function for the LPS11 (IO.STP)

<u>Format</u>	<u>Function</u>
QIO\$C IO.STP, ..., <stadd>	Stop in-progress request

where: stadd is the buffer address of the function to stop (must be the same as the address specified in the initiating request).

12.3.4.1 IO.STP - IO.STP stops a single in-progress synchronous request. It is unlike IO.KIL in that it only cancels the specified request, whereas IO.KIL cancels all requests.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.4 FORTTRAN INTERFACE

A collection of FORTRAN-callable subroutines provide FORTRAN programs access to the LPS11. These routines are described in this section.

Some of these routines may be called from FORTRAN as either subroutines or functions. All are reentrant and may be placed in a resident library.

12.4.1 The isb Status Array

The isb (I/O status block) parameter is a two-word integer array that contains the status of the FORTRAN call, in accordance with ISA convention. This array serves two purposes:

1. It is the 2-word I/O status block to which the driver returns an I/O status code on completion of an I/O operation.
2. The first word of isb receives a status code from the FORTRAN interface in ISA-compatible format, with the exception of the I/O pending condition, which is indicated by a status of zero. The ISA standard code for this condition is +2.

The meaning of its contents varies, depending on the FORTRAN call that has been executed, but Table 12-5 lists certain general principles that apply. The sections describing individual subroutines provide more details.

Table 12-5
Contents of First Word of isb

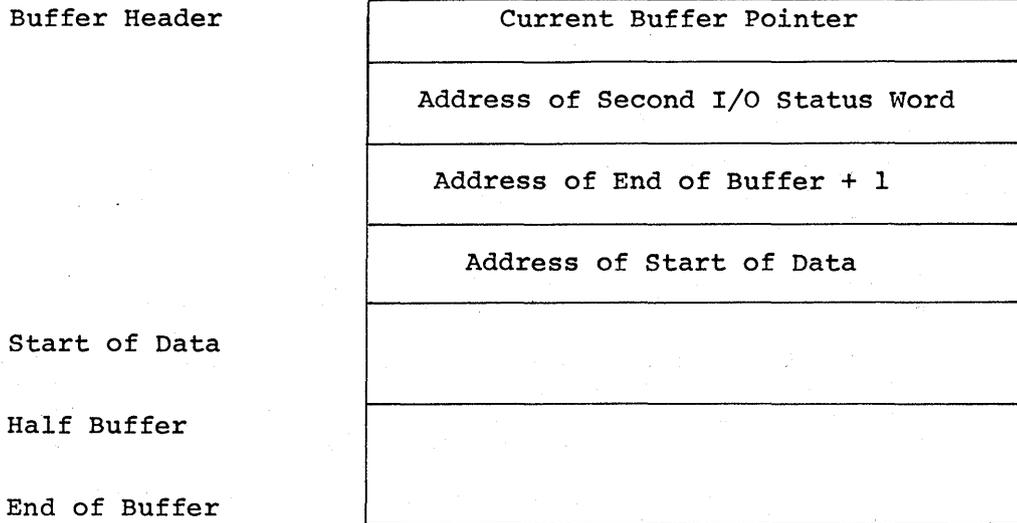
<u>Contents</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
isb(1) = 0	Operation pending; I/O in progress
isb(1) = 1	Successful completion
isb(1) = 3	Interface subroutine unable to generate QIO directive or illegal time or buffer value
$3 < \text{isb}(1) \leq 300$	QIO directive rejected and actual error code = $-(\text{isb}(1) - 3)$
isb(1) > 300	Driver rejected request and actual error code = $-\text{isb}(1) - 300$

FORTTRAN interface routines depend on asynchronous system traps to set their status. Thus, if the trap mechanism is disabled, proper status cannot be set.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.4.2 Synchronous Subroutines

RTS, DRS, HIST, SDO, and SDAC are FORTRAN subroutines that initiate synchronous functions. When they are used, the LPS11 driver and the FORTRAN program communicate by means of a caller-specified data buffer of the following format:



The buffer header is initialized when the synchronous function initiation routine is called. The length of the buffer must be even and greater than or equal to six. An even length is required so that the buffer is exactly divisible into half buffers.

The LPS11 driver performs double buffering within the half buffers. Each time the driver fills or empties a half buffer, it sets a user-specified event flag to notify the user task that more data is available or needed. The user task responds by putting more data into the buffer or by removing the data now available.

If the user task does not respond quickly enough, a data overrun may result. This occurs if the driver attempts to put another data item in the user buffer when no space is available (i.e., the buffer is full of data) or if the driver attempts to obtain the next data item from the user buffer when none is available (i.e., the buffer is empty).

All synchronous functions may be initiated immediately or when a specified digital input point is set (i.e., a start button is pushed).

They may be terminated by any combination of a program request, the processing of the required number of full buffers of data, or the clearing of a specified digital input point (i.e., a stop button is pushed). A digital output point may also optionally be set at the start of a synchronous function. This could be used, for example, as a signal to start a test instrument.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.4.3 FORTRAN Subroutine Summary

Table 12-6 lists the FORTRAN interface subroutines supported for the LPS11 under RSX-11M. S and F indicate whether they can be called as subroutines or functions.

Table 12-6
FORTRAN Interface Subroutines for the LPS11

<u>Subroutine</u>	<u>Function</u>
ADC	Read a single A/D channel (F,S)
ADJLPS	Adjust buffer pointers (S)
ASLSLN	Assign a LUN to LS0: (S)
CVSWG	Convert a switch gain A/D value to floating-point (F)
DRS	Initiate synchronous digital input sampling (S)
HIST	Initiate histogram sampling (S)
IDIR	Read digital input (F,S)
IDOR	Write digital output (F,S)
IRDB	Read data from a synchronous function input buffer (F,S)
LED	Display number in LED lights (S)
LPSTP	Stop an in-progress synchronous function (S)
PUTD	Put data into a synchronous function output buffer (S)
relay	latch an output relay (S)
RTS	Initiate synchronous A/D sampling (S)
SDAC	Initiate synchronous D/A output (S)
SDO	Initiate synchronous digital output (S)

The following subsections briefly describe the function and format of each FORTRAN subroutine call.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.4.4 ADC: Reading a Single A/D Channel

The ADC FORTRAN subroutine or function reads a single converted value from an A/D channel. If the gain-ranging option is present in the LPS11 hardware, the channel may be converted at a specific gain or the driver can select the best gain (the gain providing the most significance). The converted value is returned as a normalized floating-point number. The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL ADC (ichan,[var],[igain],[isb])
```

where: `ichan` specifies the A/D channel to be converted.

`var` is a floating-point variable that receives the converted value in floating-point format.

`igain` specifies the gain at which the specified A/D channel is to be converted. The default is 1. If specified, `igain` may have the following values:

<u>igain</u>	<u>Gain</u>
0	Autogain-ranging (driver selects gain that provides most significance)
1	1
2	4
3	16
4	64

`isb` is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

The `isb` array has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

When the function form of the call is used, the value of the function is the same as that returned in `var`. If this value is negative, an error has occurred during the A/D conversion (see section 12.5.3). Otherwise, this value is a floating-point number calculated from the following formula:

$$\text{var} = (64 * \text{converted value}) / \text{conversion gain}$$

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.4.5 ADJLPS: Adjusting Buffer Pointers

The ADJLPS FORTRAN subroutine adjusts buffer pointers for a buffer that the LPS11 driver is either synchronously filling or emptying. It is usually called when indexing is being used for direct access to the data in a buffer.

When data in a buffer is to be processed only once, the IRDB and PUTD routines may be used. In some cases, however, it is useful to leave data in the buffer until processing is complete. The user program may process the data directly, then call ADJLPS to free half the buffer. Use of the routine for synchronous output functions is quite similar. When a half buffer of data is ready for output, ADJLPS is called to make the half buffer available.

When ADJLPS is used for either input or output, care must be taken to insure that the program stays in sync with the LPS11 driver. If the program loses its position with respect to the driver, the function must be stopped and restarted. An attempt to overadjust will cause a 3 to be returned in isb (1) and no adjustment to take place.

The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL ADJLPS (ibuf,iadj,[isb])
```

where: **ibuf** is an integer array which was previously specified in a synchronous input or output function.

iadj specifies the adjustment to be applied to the buffer pointers. For an input function this specifies the number of data values that have been removed from the data buffer. For an output function this specifies the number of data values that have been put into the data buffer.

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

The isb array has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.4.6 ASLSLN: Assigning a LUN to LS0:

The ASLSLN FORTRAN subroutine assigns a logical unit number (LUN) to the LPS11. It must be called before execution of any other LPS11 FORTRAN function or subroutine. Subsequent calls to other interface routines then implicitly reference the LPS11 via the LUN assigned.

The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL ASLSLN (lun,[isb])
```

where: lun is the number of the LUN to be assigned to LS0:

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

The isb array has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

12.4.7 CVSWG: Converting a Switch Gain A/D Value to Floating-Point

The CVSWG FORTRAN function converts an A/D value from a synchronous A/D sampling function to a floating-point number. Each data item returned by the LPS11 driver consists of a gain code and converted value packed in a single word (see section 12.3.3.1). This form is not readily usable by FORTRAN, but is much more efficient than converting each value to floating-point in the LPS11 driver. This routine unpacks the gain code and value, then converts the result to a floating-point number. It may be conveniently used in conjunction with the IRDB routine (see section 12.4.12).

The call is issued as follows:

```
CVSWG (ival)
```

where: ival is the value to be converted to floating point. Its format must be that returned by a synchronous A/D sampling function. The conversion is performed according to the following formula:

$$\text{var} = (64 * \text{converted value}) / \text{conversion gain}$$

For the various gain codes,

$$\text{var} = x * \text{converted value}$$

as shown below:

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

<u>Gain</u>	<u>x</u>
1	64
4	16
16	4
64	1

12.4.8 DRS: Initiating Synchronous Digital Input Sampling

The DRS FORTRAN subroutine reads data qualified by a mask word from the digital input register at precisely timed intervals. Sampling may be started or stopped as for RTS (see section 12.4.17) and all input is double-buffered with respect to the user task. Data may be sequentially retrieved from the data buffer via the IRDB routine (see section 12.4.11), or the ADJLPS routine (see section 12.4.5) may be used in conjunction with direct access to the input data. The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL DRS (ibuf,ilen,imode,irate,iefn,imask,  
         isb,[nbuf],[istart],[istop])
```

where: **ibuf** is an integer array that is to receive the input data values.

ilen specifies the length of **ibuf** (must be even and greater than or equal to six).

imode specifies the start, stop, and sampling mode. Its value is encoded by adding together the appropriate function selection values shown below:

<u>Function Selection Value</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
128	Start on digital input point set
64	Set digital output point at start
32	Stop on digital input point clear
16	Stop on number of buffers

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

Thus a value of 192 for imode specifies:

- . The sampling is to be started when a specified digital input point is set.
- . A digital output point is to be set when sampling is started.
- . Sampling will be stopped via a program request.

irate is a 2-word integer array that specifies the time interval between digital input samples. The first word specifies the interval units as follows:

<u>irate(1)</u>	<u>Unit</u>
1	LPS11 clock ticks
2	Milliseconds
3	Seconds
4	Minutes

The second word specifies the interval magnitude as a 16-bit unsigned integer.

iefn specifies the number of the event flag that is to be set each time a half buffer of data has been collected.

imask specifies the digital input points to be read.

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned

nbuf specifies the number of buffers of data to be collected. It is needed only if a function selection value of 16 has been added into imode.

istart specifies the digital input point number to be used to trigger sampling and/or the digital output point number to be set when sampling is started. It is needed only if a function selection value of 128 or 64 has been added into imode.

istop specifies the digital input point number to be used to stop sampling. It is needed only if a function selection value of 32 has been added into imode.

When sampling is in progress, the first word of the isb array is zero and the second word contains the number of data values currently in the buffer.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.4.9 HIST: Initiating Histogram Sampling

The HIST FORTRAN subroutine measures the elapsed time between a series of events via Schmitt trigger one.

Each time a sample is to be taken, a counter is incremented and Schmitt trigger one is tested. If it has fired, then the counter is written into the user buffer and the counter is reset to zero. Thus the data returned to the user is the number of sample intervals between Schmitt trigger firings. If the counter overflows before Schmitt trigger one fires, a zero value is written into the user buffer. Sampling may be started and stopped as for RTS (see section 12.4.17) and all input is double-buffered with respect to the user task. The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL HIST (ibuf,ilen,imode,irate,iefn,isb,  
          [nbuf],[istart],[istop])
```

where: **ibuf** is an integer array that is to receive the input data values.

ilen specifies the length of **ibuf** (must be even and greater than or equal to six).

imode specifies the start, stop and sampling mode. Its value is encoded by adding the appropriate function selection values shown below:

<u>Function Selection Value</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
128	Start on digital input point set
64	Set digital output point at start
32	Stop on digital input point clear
16	Stop on number of buffers

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

irate is a 2-word integer array that specifies the time interval between samples. The first word specifies the interval units as follows:

<u>irate(1)</u>	<u>Unit</u>
1	LPS11 clock ticks
2	Milliseconds
3	Seconds
4	Minutes

The second word specifies the interval magnitude as a 16-bit signed integer.

iefn specifies the number of the event flag that is to be set each time a half buffer of data has been collected.

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

nbuf specifies the number of buffers of data to be collected. It is needed only if a function selection value of 16 has been added into imode.

istart specifies the digital input point number to be used to trigger sampling and/or the digital output point number to be set when sampling is started. It is needed only if a function selection value of 128 or 64 has been added into imode.

istop specifies the digital input point number to be used to stop sampling. It is needed only if a function selection value of 32 has been added into imode.

The isb array has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

When sampling is in progress, the first word of the isb array is zero and the second word contains the number of data values currently in the buffer.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.4.10 IDIR: Reading Digital Input

The IDIR FORTRAN subroutine or function reads the digital input register as an unsigned binary integer or as four binary-coded decimal (BCD) digits. In the latter case, the BCD digits are converted to a binary integer before the value is returned to the caller. The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL IDIR (imode,[ival],[isb])
```

where: `imode` specifies the mode in which the digital input register is to be read. If `imode` equals zero, then the digital input register is read as four BCD digits and converted to a binary integer. Otherwise it is read as a 16-bit unsigned binary integer.

`ival` is a variable that receives the value read.

`isb` is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

The `isb` array has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

When the function form of the call is used, the value of the function is the same as that returned in `ival`.

12.4.11 IDOR: Writing Digital Output

The IDOR FORTRAN subroutine or function clears or sets bits in the digital output register. The caller provides a mask word and output mode. Bits in the digital output registers corresponding to the bits specified in the mask word are either set or cleared according to the specified mode. The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL IDOR (imode,imask,[newval],[isb])
```

where: `imode` specifies whether the bits specified by `imask` are to be cleared or set in the digital output register. If `imode` equals zero, then the bits are to be cleared. Otherwise they are to be set.

`imask` specifies the bits to be cleared or set in the digital output register. It may be conveniently specified as an octal constant.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

`newval` is a variable that receives the updated (actual) value written into the digital output register.

`isb` is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

The `isb` array has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

When the function form of the call is used, the value of the function is the same as that returned in `newval`.

12.4.12 IRDB: Reading Data from an Input Buffer

The IRDB FORTRAN subroutine or function retrieves data sequentially from a buffer that the LPS11 driver is synchronously filling. If no data is available when the call is executed, the contents of the next location in the data buffer are returned without updating the buffer pointers. The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL IRDB (ibuf,[ival])
```

where: `ibuf` is an integer array which was previously specified in a synchronous input sampling request (i.e., DRS, HIST, or RTS).

`ival` is a variable that receives the next value in the data buffer.

When the function form of the call is used, the value of the function is the same as that returned in `ival`.

12.4.13 LED: Displaying in LED Lights

The LED FORTRAN subroutine displays a 16-bit signed binary integer in the LED lights. The number is displayed with a leading blank (positive number) or minus (negative number), followed by five non-zero suppressed decimal digits that represent the magnitude of the number. LED digits are numbered right to left starting at 1 and continuing to 5. The number may be displayed with or without a decimal point. The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL LED (ival,[idec],[isb])
```

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

where: ival is the variable whose value is to be displayed.

idec specifies the position of the decimal point. A value of 1 to 5 specifies that a decimal point is to be displayed. All other values specify that no decimal point is to be displayed.

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

The isb array has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

For example, the following call

```
CALL LED (-55,2)
```

would cause -0005.5 to be displayed in the LED lights.

12.4.14 LPSTP: Stopping an In-Progress Synchronous Function

The LPSTP FORTRAN subroutine selectively stops a single synchronous request. The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL LPSTP (ibuf)
```

where: ibuf is an integer array that specifies a buffer that was previously specified in a synchronous initiation request.

12.4.15 PUTD: Putting a Data Item into an Output Buffer

The PUTD FORTRAN subroutine puts data sequentially into a buffer that the LPS11 driver is synchronously emptying. If no free space is available, no operation is performed. The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL PUTD (ibuf,ival)
```

where: ibuf is an integer array which was previously specified in a synchronous output request (SDO or SDAC).

ival is a variable whose value is to be placed in the next free location in the data buffer.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.4.16 RELAY: Latching an Output Relay

The RELAY FORTRAN subroutine opens or closes the LPS11 relays. The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL RELAY (irel,istate,[isb])
```

where: irel specifies which relay is to be opened or closed (one for relay one, two for relay two).

istate specifies whether the relay is to be opened or closed. If istate equals zero, the relay is to be opened. Otherwise it is to be closed.

isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.

The isb array has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

12.4.17 RTS: Initiating Synchronous A/D Sampling

The RTS FORTRAN subroutine reads one or more A/D channels at precisely timed intervals, with or without auto gain-ranging. The auto gain-ranging algorithm causes the channels to be sampled at the highest gain at which saturation does not occur.

Sampling may be started when the interface subroutine is called or when a specified digital input point is set. A digital output point may optionally be set when sampling is started. Sampling may be terminated by a program request (stop in-progress request or kill I/O), the clearing of a digital input point, or the collection of a specified number of buffers of data.

All input is double-buffered with respect to the user task. Each time a half buffer of data has been collected, the user task is notified (via the setting of an event flag) that data is available to be processed while the driver fills the other half of the buffer. Data may be sequentially retrieved from the data buffer via the IRDB routine (see section 12.4.11), or the ADJLPS routine (see section 12.4.5) may be used in conjunction with direct access to the input data.

The call is issued as follows:

```
CALL RTS (ibuf,ilen,imode,irate,iefn,ichan,nchan,  
isb,[nbuf],[istart],[istop])
```

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

where: **ibuf** is an integer array that is to receive the converted data values.

ilen specifies the length of **ibuf** (must be even and greater than or equal to six).

imode specifies the start, stop, and sampling mode. Its value is encoded by adding together the appropriate function selection values as shown below:

<u>Function Selection Value</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
128	Start on digital input point set
64	Set digital output point at start
32	Stop on digital input point clear
16	Stop on number of buffers
8	Auto gain-ranging

irate is a 2-word integer array that specifies the time interval between A/D samples. The first word specifies the interval unit as follows:

<u>irate(1)</u>	<u>Unit</u>
1	LPS11 clocks ticks
2	Milliseconds
3	Seconds
4	Minutes

The second word specifies the interval magnitude as a 16-bit unsigned integer.

iefn specifies the number of the event flag that is to be set each time a half buffer of data has been collected.

ichan specifies the starting A/D channel of the block of channels to be sampled synchronously (must be between 0 and 63).

nchan specifies the number of A/D channels to be sampled (must be between 1 and 64).

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

- `isb` is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.
- `nbuf` specifies the number of buffers of data that are to be collected. It is needed only if a function selection value of 16 has been added into `imode`.
- `istart` specifies the digital input point number to be used to trigger sampling and/or the digital output point number to be set when sampling is started. It is needed only if a function selection value of 128 or 64 has been added into `imode`.
- `istop` specifies the digital input point number to be used to stop sampling. It is needed only if a function selection value of 32 has been added into `imode`.

The `isb` parameter has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

When sampling is in progress, the first word of the `isb` array is zero and the second word contains the number of data values currently in the buffer.

12.4.18 SDAC: Initiating Synchronous D/A Output

The SDAC FORTRAN subroutine writes data into one or more external D/A converters at precisely timed intervals. Output may be started and stopped as for RTS (see section 12.4.17) and all input is double-buffered with respect to the user task. One full buffer of data must be available when synchronous output is initiated.

After SDAC has initiated output and the specified event flag has been set to notify the task that free buffer space is available, the PUTD routine (see section 12.4.15) may be used to put data values sequentially into the output data buffer. The ADJLPS routine (see section 12.4.5) may be used in conjunction with direct access to the output data buffer. The SDAC call is issued as follows:

```
CALL SDAC (ibuf,ilen,imode,irate,iefn,ichan,  
          nchan,isb,[nbuf],[istart],[istop])
```

- where: `ibuf` is an integer array that contains the output data values.
- `ilen` specifies the length of `ibuf` (must be even and greater than or equal to six).
- `imode` specifies the start, stop and sampling mode. Its value is encoded by adding together the appropriate function selection values as shown below:

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

<u>Function Selection Value</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
128	Start on digital input point set
64	Set digital output point at start
32	Stop on digital input point clear
16	Stop on number of buffers

irate is a 2-word integer array that specifies the time interval between D/A outputs. The first word specifies the interval units as follows:

<u>irate(1)</u>	<u>Unit</u>
1	LPS11 clock ticks
2	Milliseconds
3	Seconds
4	Minutes

The second word specifies the interval magnitude as a 16-bit unsigned integer.

- iefn specifies the number of the event flag that is to be set each time a half buffer of data has been output.
- ichan specifies the starting D/A channel of the block of channels to be written into synchronously (must be between 0 and 9).
- nchan specifies the number of D/A channels to be written into (must be between 1 and 10).
- isb is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.
- nbuf specifies the number of buffers of data to be output. It is needed only if function selection value of 16 has been added into imode.
- istart specifies the digital input point number to be used to trigger sampling and/or the digital output point number to be set when sampling is started. It is needed only if a function selection value of 128 or 64 has been added into imode.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

`istop` specifies the digital input point number to be used to stop sampling. It is needed only if a function selection value of 32 has been added into `imode`.

The `isb` array has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

When sampling is in progress, the first word of the `isb` array is zero and the second word contains the number of free positions in the buffer.

12.4.19 SDO: Initiating Synchronous Digital Output

The SDO FORTRAN subroutine writes data qualified by a mask word into the digital output register at precisely timed intervals. Sampling may be started and stopped as for RTS (see section 12.4.17) and all input is double-buffered with respect to the user task. One full buffer of data must be available when output is initiated.

After SDO has initiated output and the specified event flag has been set to notify the task that free buffer space is available, the PUTD routine (see section 12.4.15) may be used to put data values sequentially into the output data buffer. The ADJLPS routine (see section 12.4.5) may be used in conjunction with direct access to the output data buffer. The SDO is issued as follows:

```
CALL SDO (ibuf,ilen,imode,irate,iefn,imask,isb,  
          [nbuf],[istart],[istop])
```

where: `ibuf` is an integer array that contains the digital output values.

`ilen` specifies the length of `ibuf` (must be even and greater than or equal to six).

`imode` specifies the start, stop, and sampling mode. Its value is encoded by adding together the appropriate function selection values as shown below:

<u>Function Selection Value</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
128	Start on digital input point set
64	Set digital output point at start
32	Stop on digital input point clear
16	Stop on number of buffers

`irate` is a 2-word integer array that specifies the time interval between digital outputs. The first word specifies the interval units as follows:

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

<u>irate(1)</u>	<u>Unit</u>
1	LPS11 clock ticks
2	Milliseconds
3	Seconds
4	Minutes

The second word specifies the interval magnitude as a 16-bit unsigned integer.

- iefn** specifies the number of the event flag that is to be set each time a half buffer of data has been output.
- imask** specifies the digital output points that are to be written. It may be conveniently specified as an octal constant.
- isb** is a 2-word integer array to which the subroutine status is returned.
- nbuf** specifies the number of buffers of data to be output. It is needed only if a function selection value of 16 has been added into imode.
- istart** specifies the digital input point number to be used to trigger sampling and/or the digital output point number to be set when sampling is started. It is needed only if a function selection value of 128 or 64 has been added into imode.
- istop** specifies the digital input point number to be used to stop sampling. It is needed if a function selection value of 32 has been added into imode.

The **isb** parameter has the standard meaning described in section 12.4.1.

When sampling is in progress, the first word of the **isb** array is zero and the second word contains the number of free positions in the buffer.

12.5 STATUS RETURNS

The error and status conditions listed in Table 12-7 are returned by the LPS11 driver described in this chapter.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

Table 12-7
LPS11 Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IS.SUC	Successful completion The operation specified in the QIO directive was completed successfully. The second word of the I/O status block can be examined to determine the number of data values processed.
IS.PND	I/O request pending The operation specified in the QIO directive has not yet been completed.
IE.ABO	Operation aborted The specified I/O operation was canceled (via IO.KIL or IO.STP) while in progress.
IE.BAD	Bad parameter An illegal specification was supplied for one or more of the device-dependent QIO parameters (words 6-11). The second I/O status word is filled with zeros.
IE.BYT	Byte-aligned buffer specified Byte alignment was specified for a data buffer but only word alignment is legal for the LPS11. Alternately, the length of a buffer is not an even number of bytes.
IE.DAO	Data overrun For the LPS11, the driver attempted to get a value from the user buffer when none was available or attempted to put a value in the user buffer when no space was available.
IE.DNR	Device not ready The physical device unit specified in the QIO directive was not ready to perform the desired I/O operation. For the LPS11, this code is returned if a device timeout occurs while a function is in progress. The second I/O status word contains the number of free positions in the buffer, as appropriate.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

Table 12-7 (Cont.)
LPS11 Status Returns

<u>Code</u>	<u>Reason</u>
IE.IEF	Invalid event flag number An invalid event flag number was specified in a synchronous function (i.e., an event flag number that was not in the range 1 to 64).
IE.IFC	Illegal function A function code was included in an I/O request that is illegal for the LPS11.
IE.NOD	Insufficient buffer space Dynamic storage space has been depleted, and there is insufficient buffer space available to allocate a secondary control block for a synchronous function.
IE.OFL	Device off-line The physical device unit associated with the LUN specified in the QIO directive was not on-line. When the system was booted, a device check indicated that this physical device unit was not in the configuration.
IE.ONP	Option not present An option dependent subfunction was requested, and the required feature was not specified at system generation. For example the gain-ranging option or D/A option is not present. The second I/O status word contains zeros.
IE.PRI	Privilege violation The task which issued the request was not privileged to execute that request. For the LPS11, a checkpointable task attempted to execute a synchronous sampling function.
IE.RSU	Resource in use A resource needed by the function requested in the QIO directive was being used (see section 12.5.1).
IE.SPC	Illegal address space The buffer specified for a read or write request was partially or totally outside the address space of the issuing task. Alternately a byte count of zero was specified. The second I/O status word contains zeros.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

FORTRAN interface values for these status returns are presented in section 12.5.4.

12.5.1 IE.RSU

IE.RSU is returned if a function requests a resource that is currently being used. The requesting task may repeat the request at a later time or take any alternative action required.

Because certain functions do not need such resources, they never cause this code to be returned. Other functions return this code under the following conditions:

<u>Function</u>	<u>When IE.RSU Is Returned</u>
IO.SDO	One or more specified digital output bits are in use
IO.ADS	Digital output point (if specified) is in use
IO.HIS	Digital output point (if specified) is in use
IO.MDA	Digital output point (if specified) is in use
IO.MDI	Digital output point (if specified) or digital input points to be sampled are in use
IO.MDO	Digital output point (if specified) or output bits to be written are in use

The following components of the LPS11 are each considered a single resource:

<u>Resource</u>	<u>When Shareable</u>
The A/D converter and clock	Always shareable.
Each bit in the digital output register	Never shareable.
Each bit in the digital input register	Always shareable when used by IO.SDI or for start/stop conditions (specified in subfunction modifier bits), even when in use by another function; when specified by a synchronous digital input function, not shareable with another such function.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

Each resource is allocated on a first-come-first-served basis (i.e., when a conflict arises, the most recent request is rejected with a status of IE.RSU).

12.5.2 Second I/O Status Word

On successful completion of a function specified in a QIO macro call, the IS.SUC code is returned to the first word of the I/O status block.

Table 12-8 lists the contents of the second word of the status block, on successful completion for each LPS11 function.

Table 12-8
Returns to Second Word of I/O Status Block

<u>Successful Function</u>	<u>Contents of Second Word</u>
IO.KIL	Number of data values before I/O was canceled
IO.LED	Zero
IO.REL	Zero
IO.SDI	Masked value read from digital input register
IO.SDO	Updated value written into digital output register
IO.ADS	Number of data values remaining in buffer
IO.HIS	Number of data values remaining in buffer
IO.MDA	Number of free positions in buffer
IO.MDI	Number of data values remaining in buffer
IO.MDO	Number of free positions in buffer
IO.STP	Zero

When IE.BAD is returned, the second I/O status word contains zero. LPS11 driver functions return the IE.BAD code under the following conditions:

<u>Function</u>	<u>When IE.BAD is Returned</u>
IO.REL	Relay number not 0 or 1.
IO.ADS	No I/O status block, illegal digital

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

IO.MDA I/O point number, or illegal channel number.
IO.HIS No I/O status block or illegal
IO.MDI digital I/O point number.
IO.MDO

12.5.3 IO.ADS and ADC Errors

While IO.ADS or the ADC FORTRAN subroutine is converting a sample, two error conditions may arise. Both of these conditions are reported to the user by placing illegal values in the data buffer. A -1 (177777 octal) is placed in the buffer if an A/D conversion does not complete within 30 microseconds. A -2 (177776 octal) is placed in the buffer if an error occurs during an A/D conversion.

12.5.4 FORTRAN Interface Values

The values listed in Table 12-9 are returned in FORTRAN subroutine calls.

Table 12-9
FORTRAN Interface Values

<u>Status Return</u>	<u>FORTRAN Value</u>
IS.SUC	+01
IS.PND	+00
IE.ABO	+315
IE.ADP	+101
IE.BAD	+301
IE.BYT	+319
IE.DAO	+313
IE.DNR	+303
IE.IEF	+100
IE.IFC	+302
IE.ILU	+99
IE.NOD	+323
IE.ONP	+305
IE.PRI	+316
IE.RSU	+317
IE.SDP	+102
IE.SPC	+306
IE.ULN	+08
IE.UPN	+04

12.6 PROGRAMMING HINTS

This section contains information on important programming considerations relevant to users of the LPS11 driver described in this chapter.

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.6.1 The LPS11 Clock and Sampling Rates

The basic LPS11 clock frequency (count rate) for all synchronous functions is always 10KHZ. Device characteristics word 4 contains a 16-bit buffer preset value, set dynamically or at system generation, that controls the rate of "ticks" (i.e. the rate at which the LPS11 clock interrupts). The quotient that results when this value is divided into 10KHZ is the rate of "ticks". For example, if this value is 2, the "tick" rate is 5KHZ. The user may use a GET LUN INFORMATION system directive to examine the value and a SET /BUF MCR function to modify it while the system is running.

The ticks parameter in a synchronous function specifies the number of "ticks" between samples or data transfers. The value of ticks is a 16-bit number. Thus 65,536 discrete sampling frequencies are possible for each of 65,536 different "tick" rates. This provides a maximum single-channel sample rate of 1 sample every 100 microseconds (possible in hardware but impractical in software) and a minimum of 1 sample every 429,495 seconds. A single-channel rate greater than 2KHZ is possible, but not recommended.

The figures below represent initial timing tests run under RSX-11M on a PDP-11/40 with memory management and no gain-ranging option. It should be noted that no computation was performed on the data other than continuously removing it from or inserting it into the data buffer.

Analog rates:

- 1 request for 1 channel at 2.5KHZ
- 1 request for 2 channels at 2.0KHZ (aggregate 4KHZ)
- 2 requests for 1 channel at 2.0KHZ (aggregate 4KHZ)

Digital rates:

- 2 requests at 2.5KHZ (aggregate 5KHZ)

12.6.2 Importance of the I/O Status Block

An I/O status block must be specified with every synchronous function. If the first I/O status word is nonzero, the request has been terminated and the value indicates the reason for termination. Otherwise, the request is in progress, and the second I/O status word contains the number of data values remaining in the buffer (or the number of free positions in the buffer for IO.MDA and IO.MDO).

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

12.6.3 Buffer Management

The buffer unload protocol for synchronous input functions is described below. The user constructs a five-word block that contains the following:

```
IOSB:      .BLKW      2      ; I/O STATUS DOUBLE-WORD
CURPT:     .WORD      BUFFER  ; ADDRESS OF BUFFER
LSTPT:     .WORD      BUFFER+n ; ADDRESS OF END OF BUFFER
FSTPT:     .WORD      BUFFER  ; ADDRESS OF BUFFER
```

Two of these words are required by the driver (I/O status block) and the remaining three by the user to unload data values from the buffer.

The user then issues the I/O request with the appropriate parameters and the address of the above block as the I/O status block. The QIO directive zeros both I/O status words to initialize them.

If the driver accepts the request, it sets up a write pointer to the first word in the user buffer. Thus the user has a buffer read pointer and the driver has a buffer write pointer. The user and the driver share the second I/O status word, which is the number of data words in the buffer that contain data.

Each time the driver attempts to put a sample value into the buffer, it increments the second I/O status word and compares the result with the size of the buffer. If the result is greater, buffer overrun has occurred and the request is terminated. Otherwise the value is stored in the buffer at the address specified by the driver's write pointer and the write pointer is updated.

If the value stored in the user buffer fills half of the buffer, the event flag specified in the I/O request is set in order to notify the user that a half buffer of data is available to be processed. Each time the user task is awakened, it executes the following code:

```
5$:      Clear      efn      ;
10$:     TST        IOSB+2    ;ANY DATA IN BUFFER?
        BEQ        30$      ;IF EQ NO
        MOV        @CURPT,R0  ;GET NEXT VALUE FROM BUFFER
        DEC        IOSB+2    ;REDUCE NUMBER OF ENTRIES
        ADD        #2,CURPT   ;UPDATE BUFFER READ POINTER
        CMP        CURPT,LSTPT ;END OF BUFFER?
        BLOS      20$      ;IF LOS NO
        MOV        FSTPT,CURPT ;RESET BUFFER READ POINTER
20$:     Process data value ;
        BR        10$      ;TRY AGAIN
30$:     TST        IOSB      ;REQUEST TERMINATED?
        BNE      40$      ;IF NE YES
        Waitfor    efn      ;
        BR        5$       ;
40$:     Determine reason for termination
```

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

For IO.MDA and IO.MDO, this protocol differs slightly. The user task maintains a write pointer and the driver a read pointer. The entire buffer must be full when the request is executed.

12.6.4 Use of ADJLPS for Input and Output

The following FORTRAN example illustrates the proper protocol for using ADJLPS for synchronous input and output.

Synchronous input:

```
      DIMENSION IBF(1004),IERR(2),INTVL(2)
C
C INITIATE SYNCHRONOUS A/D SAMPLING,
C
      INTVL(1)=2
      INTVL(2)=5
      CALL RTS(IBF,1004,160,INTVL,IEFN,6,6,IERR,50,16,15)
C
C INITIALIZE HALF BUFFER INDEX
C
      INDX=4
C
C WAITFOR HALF BUFFER OF DATA
C
      10   CALL WAITFR(IEFN)
C
C CLEAR EVENT FLAG
C
      15   CALL CLREF(IEFN)
C
C PROCESS HALF BUFFER OF DATA
C
      SUM=0
      DO 20 I=1,500
      SUM=SUM+CVSWG(IBF(I+INDX))
      20   CONTINUE
      AVERG=SUM/500
C
C FREE HALF BUFFER FOR MORE DATA
C
      CALL ADJLPS(IBF,500)
C
C ADJUST BUFFER INDEX
C
      INDX=INDX+500
      IF(INDX.GE.1004) INDX=4
C
C CHECK IF ANOTHER HALF BUFFER OF DATA IS AVAILABLE
C
      IF(IERR(2).GE.500) GO TO 15
```

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

```
IF(IERR(1).NE.0) GO TO end of sampling
GO TO 10
```

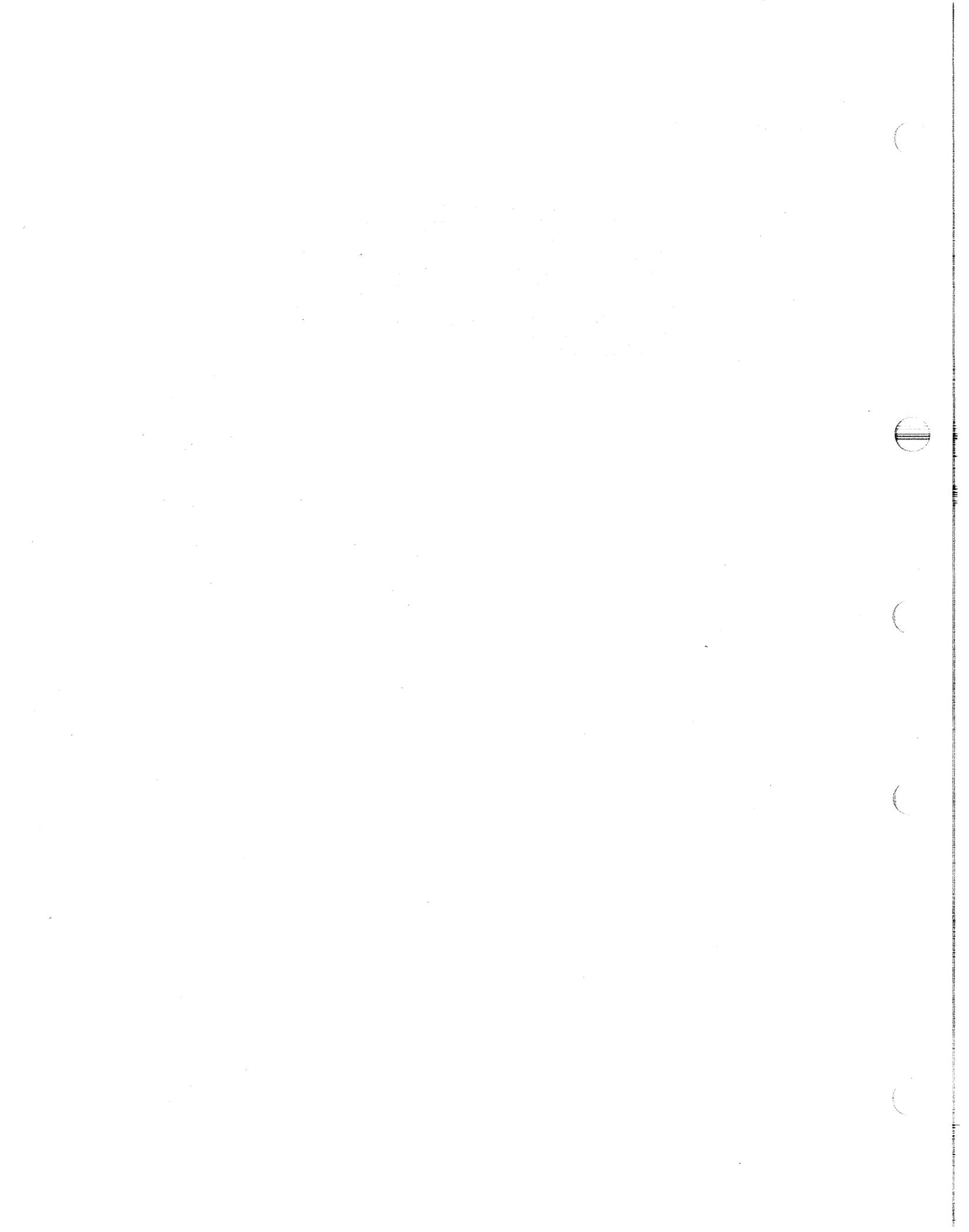
Synchronous output:

```
      DIMENSION IBF(1004),IERR(2),INTVL(2)
C
C FIRST BUFFER OF DATA MUST BE AVAILABLE AT START
C
C THIS EXAMPLE ASSUMES FIRST BUFFER IS FULL AT START
C
C START SYNCHRONOUS DIGITAL OUTPUT FUNCTION
C
      INTVL(1)=2
      INTVL(2)=5
      CALL SDO(IBF,1004,160,INTVL,IEFN,MASK,IERR,50,16,15)
C
C INITIALIZE HALF BUFFER INDEX
C
      INDX=4
C
C WAITFOR ROOM IN BUFFER
C
10    CALL WAITFR(IEFN)
C
C CLEAR EVENT FLAG
C
15    CALL CLREF(IEFN)
C
C CALCULATE VALUES TO PUT IN BUFFER
C
      X=(Y+2)*Z
      DO 20 I=1,500
      IBF(I+INDX)=X**5/A
20    CONTINUE
C
C SIGNIFY ANOTHER HALF BUFFER IS FULL
C
      CALL ADJLPS(IBF.500)
C
C ADJUST BUFFER INDEX
C
      INDX=INDX+500
      IF(INDX.GE.1004) INDX=4
C
C CHECK IF ANOTHER HALF BUFFER IS EMPTY
C
      IF(IERR(2).GE.500) GO TO 15
      IF(IERR(1).NE.0) GO TO end of sampling
      GO TO 10
```

CHAPTER 12. LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

NOTE

In both the above examples care is taken to assure that the program stays "in sync" with the LPS11 driver. If the program "loses" its position with respect to the driver the function must be stopped and restarted since this is the only way to recover. Caution should be exercised to insure that the above program sequence is used to avoid a possible loss of data.



APPENDIX A

SUMMARY OF I/O FUNCTIONS

This appendix summarizes legal I/O functions for all device drivers described in this manual. Both devices and functions are listed alphabetically. The meanings of the five parameters represented by the ellipsis (...) are described in section 1.4.1. The meanings of the function-specific parameters shown below are discussed in the appropriate driver chapters. The user may reference these functions symbolically by invoking the system macros FILIO\$ (standard I/O functions) and SPCIO\$ (special I/O functions), or by allowing them to be defined at task build time from the system object library.

APPENDIX A. SUMMARY OF I/O FUNCTIONS

A.1 ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER DRIVERS

IO.KIL,... Cancel I/O requests
IO.RBC,...,<stadd,size,stcnta> Initiate an A/D conversion

A.2 CARD READER DRIVER

IO.ATT,... Attach device
IO.DET,... Detach device
IO.KIL,... Cancel I/O requests
IO.RDB,...,<stadd,size> Read logical block (binary)
IO.RLB,...,<stadd,size> Read logical block (alphanumeric)
IO.RVB,...,<stadd,size> Read virtual block (alphanumeric)

A.3 CASSETTE DRIVER

IO.ATT,... Attach device
IO.DET,... Detach device
IO.EOF,... Write end-of-file
IO.KIL,... Cancel I/O requests
IO.RLB,...,<stadd,size> Read logical block
IO.RVB,...,<stadd,size> Read virtual block
IO.RWD,... Rewind tape
IO.SPB,...,<nbs> Space blocks
IO.SPF,...,<nes> Space files
IO.WLB,...,<stadd,size> Write logical block
IO.WVB,...,<stadd,size> Write virtual block

A.4 COMMUNICATION DRIVERS (MESSAGE-ORIENTED)

IO.HDX,... Set device to half-duplex mode
IO.INL,... Initialize device and set device characteristics

APPENDIX A. SUMMARY OF I/O FUNCTIONS

IO.RLB,....,<stadd,size>	Read logical block, stripping sync characters
IO.RNS,....,<stadd,size>	Read logical block, transparent mode
IO.WYN,....,<syn>	Specify sync character
IO.TRM,....	Terminate communication, disconnecting from physical channel
IO.WLB,....,<stadd,size>	Write logical block with sync leader
IO.WNS,....,<stadd,size>	Write logical block, no sync leader

A.5 DECTAPE DRIVER

IO.RLB,....,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Read logical block (forward)
IO.RLV,....,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Read logical block (reverse)
IO.RVB,....,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Read virtual block (forward)
IO.WLB,....,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Write logical block (forward)
IO.WLV,....,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Write logical block (reverse)
IO.WVB,....,<stadd,size,,,lbn>	Write virtual block (forward)

A.6 DISK DRIVER

IO.RLB,....,<stadd,size,,blkh,blk1>	Read logical block
IO.RVB,....,<stadd,size,,blkh,blk1>	Read virtual block
IO.WLB,....,<stadd,size,,blkh,blk1>	Write logical block
IO.WVB,....,<stadd,size,,blkh,blk1>	Write virtual block

A.7 LABORATORY PERIPHERAL SYSTEM DRIVER

IO.ADS,....,<stadd,size,pnt,ticks,bufs,chna>	Perform A/D sampling
IO.HIS,....,<stadd,size,pnt,ticks,bufs>	Perform histogram sampling
IO.KIL,....	Cancel I/O requests
IO.LED,....,<int,num>	Display number in LED lights

APPENDIX A. SUMMARY OF I/O FUNCTIONS

IO.MDA,....,<stadd,size,pnt, ticks,bufs,chnd>	Perform D/A output
IO.MDI,....,<stadd,size,pnt, ticks,bufs,mask>	Perform digital input sampling
IO.MDO,....,<stadd,size,pnt, ticks,bufs,mask>	Perform digital output
IO.REL,....,<rel,pol>	Latch output relay
IO.SDI,....,<mask>	Read digital input register
IO.SDO,....,<mask,data>	Write digital output register
IO.STP,....,<stadd>	Stop in-progress request

A.8 LINE PRINTER DRIVER

IO.ATT,...	Attach device
IO.DET,...	Detach device
IO.KIL,...	Cancel I/O requests
IO.WLB,....,<stadd,size,vfc>	Write logical block
IO.WVB,....,<stadd,size,vfc>	Write virtual block

A.9 MAGNETIC TAPE DRIVER

IO.ATT,...	Attach device
IO.DET,...	Detach device
IO.EOF,...	Write end-of-file (tape mark)
IO.KIL,...	Cancel I/O requests
IO.RLB,....,<stadd,size>	Read logical block
IO.RVB,....,<stadd,size>	Read virtual block
IO.RWD,...	Rewind tape
IO.RWU,...	Rewind and turn unit off-line
IO.SEC,...	Read tape characteristics
IO.SMO,....,<cb>	Mount tape and set tape characteristics

APPENDIX A. SUMMARY OF I/O FUNCTIONS

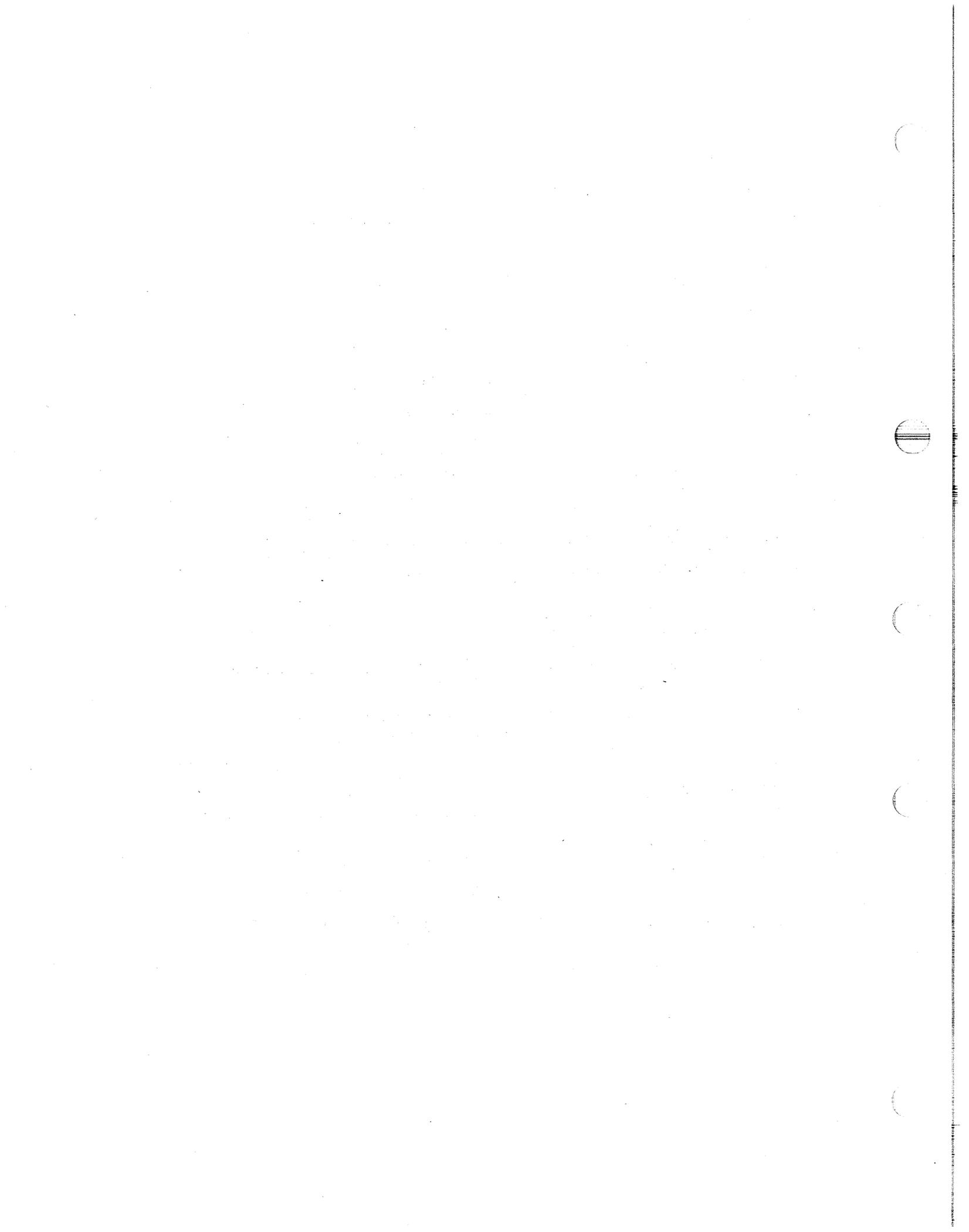
IO.SPB,....,<nbs>	Space blocks
IO.SPF,....,<nes>	Space files
IO.STC,....,<cb>	Set tape characteristics
IO.WLB,....,<stadd,size>	Write logical block
IO.WVB,....,<stadd,size>	Write virtual block

A.10 TERMINAL DRIVER

IO.ATT,...	Attach device
IO.DET,...	Detach device
IO.KIL,...	Cancel I/O requests
IO.RLB,....,<stadd,size>	Read logical block
IO.RVB,....,<stadd,size>	Read virtual block
IO.WLB,....,<stadd,size,vfc>	Write logical block
IO.WVB,....,<stadd,size,vfc>	Write virtual block

A.11 UNIVERSAL DIGITAL CONTROLLER DRIVER

IO.CCI,....,<stadd,sizb,tevf>	Connect a buffer to contact interrupts
IO.CTI,....,<stadd,sizb,tevf,arv>	Connect a buffer to timer interrupts
IO.DCI,...	Disconnect a buffer from contact interrupt
IO.DTI,...	Disconnect a buffer from timer interrupts
IO.ITI,....,<mn,ic>	Initialize a timer
IO.KIL,...	Cancel I/O requests
IO.MLO,....,<opn,pp,dp>	Open or close latching digital output points
IO.RBC,....,<stadd,size,stcnta>	Initiate multiple A/D conversions



APPENDIX B

I/O FUNCTION AND STATUS CODES

This appendix lists the numeric codes for all I/O functions, directive status returns, and I/O completion status returns. Lists are organized in the following sequence:

- . I/O completion status codes
- . Directive status codes
- . Device-independent I/O function codes
- . Device-dependent I/O function codes

Device-dependent function codes are listed by device. Both devices and codes are organized in alphabetical order.

For each code, the symbolic name is listed in form IO.xxx, IE.xxx, or IS.xxx. A brief description of the error or function is also included. Both decimal and octal values are provided for all codes.

B.1 I/O STATUS CODES

This section lists error and success codes which can be returned in the I/O status block on completion of an I/O function. The codes below may be referenced symbolically by invoking the system macro IOERR\$.

B.1.1 I/O Status Error Codes

Name	Decimal	Octal	Meaning
IE.ABO	-15	177761	Operation aborted
IE.ALN	-34	177736	File already open
IE.BAD	-01	177777	Bad parameter

APPENDIX B. I/O FUNCTION AND STATUS CODES

IE.BBE	-56	177710	Bad block
IE.BLK	-20	177754	Illegal block number
IE.BYT	-19	177755	Byte-aligned buffer specified
IE.CON	-22	177752	UDC connect error
IE.DAA	-08	177770	Device already attached
IE.DAO	-13	177763	Data overrun
IE.DNA	-07	177771	Device not attached
IE.DNR	-03	177775	Device not ready
IE.EOF	-10	177766	End-of-file encountered
IE.EOT	-62	177702	End-of-tape encountered
IE.EOV	-11	177765	End-of-volume encountered
IE.FHE	-59	177705	Fatal hardware error
IE.IFC	-2	177776	Illegal function
IE.MOD	-21	177753	Invalid UDC module
IE.NLN	-37	177733	File not open
IE.NOD	-23	177751	No dynamic memory available to allocate a secondary control block.
IE.OFL	-65	177677	Device off-line
IE.ONP	-05	177773	Illegal subfunction
IE.OVR	-18	177756	Illegal read overlay request
IE.PRI	-16	177760	Privilege violation
IE.RSU	-17	177757	Shareable resource in use
IE.SPC	-06	177772	Illegal address space
IE.VER	-04	177774	Unrecoverable error
IE.WLK	-12	177764	Write-locked device

APPENDIX B. I/O FUNCTION AND STATUS CODES

B.1.2 I/O Status Success Codes

Name	Decimal	Octal	Meaning
IS.CR	Byte 0: 1 Byte 1: 15	006401	Successful completion with carriage return
IS.ESC	Byte 0: 1 Byte 1: 33	015401	Successful completion with ESCape
IS.PND	+00	000000	I/O request pending
IS.SUC	+01	000001	Successful completion

B.2 DIRECTIVES CODES

This section lists error and success codes which can be returned in the directive status word at symbolic location \$DSW when a QIO directive is issued.

B.2.1 Directive Error Codes

Name	Decimal	Octal	Meaning
IE.ADP	-98	177636	Invalid address
IE.IEF	-97	177637	Invalid event flag number
IE.ILU	-96	177640	Invalid logical unit number
IE.SDP	-99	177635	Invalid DIC number or DPB size
IE.ULN	-05	177773	Unassigned LUN
IE.UPN	-01	177777	Insufficient dynamic storage

B.2.2 Directive Success Codes

Name	Decimal	Octal	Meaning
IS.SUC	+01	000001	Directive accepted

B.3 I/O FUNCTION CODES

This section lists codes for all standard and device-dependent I/O functions.

APPENDIX B. I/O FUNCTION AND STATUS CODES

B.3.1 Standard I/O Function Codes

Name	Octal Words	Octal Code	Bytes Subcode	Meaning
IO.ATT	001400	3	0	Attach device
IO.DET	002000	4	0	Detach device
IO.KIL	000012	0	12	Cancel I/O requests
IO.RLB	001000	2	0	Read logical block
IO.RVB	010400	21	0	Read virtual block
IO.WLB	000400	1	0	Write logical block
IO.WVB	011000	22	0	Write virtual block

B.3.2 Specific A/D Converter I/O Function Codes

Name	Octal Words	Octal Code	Bytes Subcode	Meaning
IO.RBC	003000	6	0	Initiate an A/D conversion

B.3.3 Specific A/D Converter I/O Function Codes

Name	Octal Words	Octal Code	Bytes Subcode	Meaning
IO.RDB	001200	2	200	Read logical block (binary)

B.3.4 Specific Cassette I/O Function Codes

Name	Octal Words	Octal Code	Bytes Subcode	Meaning
IO.EOF	003000	6	0	End-of-file encountered
IO.RWD	002400	5	0	Rewind tape
IO.SPB	002420	5	20	Space blocks
IO.SPF	002440	5	40	Space files

APPENDIX B. I/O FUNCTION AND STATUS CODES

B.3.5 Specific Communication (Message-Oriented) I/O Function Codes

Name	Octal Words	Octal Code	Bytes Subcode	Meaning
IO.HDX	003010	6	10	Set device to half-duplex mode
IO.INL	002400	5	0	Initialize device and set device characteristics
IO.RNS	001020	2	20	Read logical block, transparent mode
IO.SYN	003040	6	40	Specify sync character
IO.TRM	002310	5	10	Terminate communication, disconnecting from physical channel
IO.WNS	000410	1	10	Write logical block with no sync leader

B.3.6 Specific DECTape I/O Function Codes

Name	Octal Words	Octal Code	Bytes Subcode	Meaning
IO.RLV	001100	2	100	Read logical block (reverse)
IO.WLV	000500	1	100	Write logical block (reverse)

B.3.7 Specific LPS I/O Function Codes

Name	Octal Words	Octal Code	Bytes Subcode	Meaning
IO.ADS	014000	30	0	Initialize A/D sampling
IO.HIS	015000	32	0	Initialize histogram sampling
IO.LED	012000	24	0	Display number in LED lights
IO.MDA	016000	34	0	Initialize D/A output
IO.MDI	014400	31	0	Initialize digital input sampling
IO.MDO	015400	33	0	Initialize digital output
IO.REL	013400	27	0	Latch output relay

APPENDIX B. I/O FUNCTION AND STATUS CODES

IO.SDI	013000	26	0	Read digital input register
IO.SDO	012400	25	0	Write digital output register
IO.STP	016400	35	0	Stop in-progress request

B.3.8 Specific Magtape I/O Function Codes

Name	Octal Words	Octal Code	Bytes Subcode	Meaning
IO.EOF	003000	6	0	Write end-of-file gap
IO.RWD	002400	5	0	Rewind tape
IO.RWU	002540	5	140	Rewind and unload
IO.SEC	002520	5	120	Sense characteristics
IO.SMO	002560	5	160	Mount and set characteristics
IO.SPB	002420	5	20	Space blocks
IO.SPF	002440	5	40	Space files
IO.STC	002500	5	100	Set characteristics

B.3.9 Specific UDC I/O Function Codes

Name	Octal Words	Octal Code	Bytes Subcode	Meaning
IO.CCI	014000	30	0	Connect a buffer to contact interrupt digital input
IO.CTI	015400	33	0	Connect a timer
IO.DCI	014400	31	0	Disconnect a buffer from contact interrupt digital input
IO.DTI	016000	34	0	Disconnect a timer
IO.ITI	017000	36	0	Initialize a timer
IO.MLO	006000	14	0	Open or close latching digital output points
IO.RBC	003000	6	0	Initiate multiple A/D conversions

APENDIX C

RSX-11M PROGRAMMING EXAMPLE

MESSAGE TRANSFER

MACRO M0710 10-OCT-74 10:19 PAGE 1

```
1          .TITLE MESSAGE TRANSFER
2          .IDENT /01/
3
4          ;
5          ; COPYRIGHT 1974, DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP., MAYNARD, MASS.
6          ;
7          ; THIS SOFTWARE IS FURNISHED TO PURCHASER UNDER A LICENSE FOR USE
8          ; ON A SINGLE COMPUTER SYSTEM AND CAN BE COPIED (WITH INCLUSION
9          ; OF DEC'S COPYRIGHT NOTICE) ONLY FOR USE IN SUCH SYSTEM, EXCEPT
10         ; AS MAY OTHERWISE BE PROVIDED IN WRITING BY DEC.
11         ;
12         ; THE INFORMATION IN THIS DOCUMENT IS SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT
13         ; NOTICE AND SHOULD NOT BE CONSTRUED AS A COMMITMENT BY DIGITAL
14         ; EQUIPMENT CORPORATION.
15         ;
16         ; DEC ASSUMES NO RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE USE OR RELIABILITY
17         ; OF ITS SOFTWARE ON EQUIPMENT WHICH IS NOT SUPPLIED BY DEC.
18         ;
19         ; VERSION 01
20         ;
21         ; EARL WALDIN 5-SEP-74
22         ;
23         ; DEMONSTRATION OF USE OF RSX-11M I/O
24         ;
25         ; MACRO LIBRARY CALLS
26         ;
27         ;
28         .MCALL ALUNSS,DI0SS,WTSESS,WSIGSS
29
30         ;
31         ; LOCALLY DEFINED MACROS
32         ;
33         ;
34         .MACRO CALL SUBR          ;DEFINITION FOR SUBROUTINE CALLS
35         JSR PC,SUBR
36         .ENDM
37
38         .MACRO RETURN          ;SUBROUTINE RETURN MACRO
39         RTS PC
40         .ENDM
41
42         ;
43         ; LOCAL DATA
44         ;
45         ;
46         ;
```

```

47          ; READ-RELATED STORAGE
48          ;
49          ;
50 000000 000000 RDSTS: .WORD 0          ;READ STATUS BLOCK
51 000002 000000          .WORD 0
52          ;
53          ;
54          ; WRITE-RELATED STORAGE
55          ;
56          ;
57 000004 000000 WRSTS: .WORD 0          ;WRITE STATUS BLOCK

```

MESSAGE TRANSFER

MACRO M0710 10-OCT-74 10:19 PAGE 1-1

```

58 000006 000000          .WORD 0
59          ;
60          ;
61          ; BUFFER STORAGE
62          ;
63          ;
64 000010          BUF1: .BLKB 82.          ;BUFFER 1
65 000132          BUF2: .BLKB 82.          ;BUFFER 2
66          ;
67          ;+
68          ; **-$XFER-DEMONSTRATE USE OF RSX-11M I/O BY OUTPUTTING RECORDS
69          ; FROM TI: (USER'S TERMINAL) TO LINE PRINTER. REQUESTS ARE DOUBLE
70          ; BUFFERED TO DEMONSTRATE HOW OPERATIONS MAY BE OVERLAPPED.
71          ;-
72          ;
73 000254          $XFER:: ALUNSS #1,#TI,#0          ;LUN 1 IS TI: DEVICE
74 000274          ALUNSS #2,#LP          ;LUN 2 IS LP:
75          ;
76          ; READ A LINE FROM INPUT DEVICE, LUN 1
77          ;
78 000314          10$: QIOSS #IO,RLB,#1,#1,,$RDSTS,,$<#BUF1,#80,>
79 000366 103003          BCC 20$          ;IF DISPATCHED OK, CONTINUE
80 000370          CALL STCHK          ;CHECK STATUS
81 000374 000747          BR 10$          ;IF RECOVERABLE ERROR, TRY AGAIN
82          ;
83 000376          20$: WTSESS #1          ;WAIT UNTIL 1 COMPLETE
84 000410 126727          CMPB RDSTS,#IS,SUC          ;READ SUCCESSFUL?
           177364
           000000G
85 000416 001402          BEQ 30$          ;CONTINUE IF SUCCESSFUL
86 000420 000167          JMP 100$          ;TERMINATE IF NOT SUCCESSFUL
           000440
87          ;
88 000424 016701 30$: MOV RDSTS+2,R1          ;GET ACTUAL BYTE COUNT IN R1
           177352
89          ;
90          ; BEGIN TO FILL SECOND BUFFER
91          ;
92 000430          40$: QIOSS #IO,RLB,#1,#2,,$RDSTS,,$<#BUF2,#80,>
93 000502 103003          BCC 50$          ;CONTINUE IF DISPATCH OK
94 000504          CALL STCHK          ;CHECK STATUS
95 000510 000747          BR 40$          ;TRY AGAIN
96          ;
97          ;
98          ; START BUFFER 1 OUT
99          ;
100          ;
101 000512          50$: QIOSS #IO,RLB,#2,#1,,$WRSTS,,$<#BUF1,R1,#40>
102 000564 103003          BCC 60$          ;CONTINUE IF NO DISPATCH ERROR
103 000566          CALL STCHK          ;CHECK STATUS
104 000572 000747          BR 50$          ;TRY AGAIN
105          ;
106          ;
107          ; THIS IS A SYNCHRONIZATION POINT. BOTH FUNCTIONS MUST COMPLETE
108          ; BEFORE ANYTHING ELSE BEGINS.
109          ;
110          ;

```

```

111 000574      60$:  WTSE$$ #2      ;WAIT FOR 2 TO FILL
112 000606      126727  CMPB   RDSTS,#IS.SUC  ;SUCCESSFUL?
      177166
      000000G
113 000614      001123      BNE    100$      ;IF NOT, CRASH
114 000616      016702      MOV    RDSTS+2,R2 ;GET COUNT FOR BUFFER 2
      177160
115 000622      WTSE$$ #1      ;WAIT FOR 1 TO EMPTY
116 000634      126727  CMPB   WRSTS,#IS.SUC ;SUCCESSFUL?
      177144
      000000G
117 000642      001110      BNE    100$      ;IF NOT, CRASH
118
119      ; FILL BUFFER 1, EMPTY BUFFER 2
120      ;
121 000644      70$:  QIO$$ #IO.RLB,#1,#1,,#RDSTS,,<#BUF1,#80.>
122 000716      103003      BCC    80$      ;IF OK, CONTINUE
123 000720      CALL   STCHK      ; CHECK STATUS
124 000724      000747      BR     70$      ;TRY AGAIN
125
126 000726      80$:  QIO$$ #IO.WLB,#2,#2,,#WRSTS,,<#BUF2,R2,#40>
127 001000      103003      BCC    90$      ;CONTINUE IF SUCCESSFUL
128 001002      CALL   STCHK      ;CHECK STATUS IF NOT SUCCESSFUL
129 001006      000747      BR     80$      ;RETURN
130
131      ;
132      ; THIS IS ALSO A SYNCHRONIZATION POINT
133      ;
134
135 001010      90$:  WTSE$$ #1      ;WAIT FOR 1 TO FILL
136 001022      126727  CMPB   RDSTS,#IS.SUC  ;SUCCESSFUL?
      176752
      000000G
137 001030      001015      BNE    100$      ;IF NOT, CRASH
138 001032      016701      MOV    RDSTS+2,R1 ;GET ACTUAL BYTE COUNT IN R1
      176744
139 001036      WTSE$$ #2      ;WAIT FOR BUFFER 2 TO EMPTY
140 001050      126727  CMPB   WRSTS,#IS.SUC ;SUCCESSFUL?
      176730
      000000G
141 001056      001002      BNE    100$      ;TERMINATE IF NOT
142 001060      000167      JMP    40$      ;BACK INTO LOOP
      177344
143
144      ;
145      ; DON'T ATTEMPT TO RECOVER ERRORS
146      ;
147
148 001064      000004  100$:  IOT          ;CRASH TASK
149
150      ;+
151      ; **= STCHK = ATTEMPT TO RECOVER DIRECTIVE DISPATCH ERROR ONLY IF
152      ; IT INVOLVES DYNAMIC MEMORY ALLOCATION = OTHERWISE TERMINATE.
153      ;
154      ; INPUTS:
155      ;
156      ; (SP)=RETURN ADDRESS

```

MESSAGE TRANSFER

MACRO M0710 10-OCT-74 10:19 PAGE 1-3

```
157 ;
158 ; OUTPUTS:
159 ;
160 ; NONE
161 ;-
162
163 001066 126727 STCHK: CMPB $DSW,#IE.UPN ;BUFFER ALLOCATION FAILURE?
      000000G
      000000G
164 001074 001004 BNE 10$ ;IF NOT TERMINATE
165 001076 WSIGSS ;AWAIT SIGNIFICANT EVENT
166 001104 RETURN ;TRY AGAIN
167
168 001106 000004 10$: IOT ;CRASH TASK
169
170 000254 .END $XFER
```

MESSAGE TRANSFER
SYMBOL TABLE

MACRO M0710 10-OCT-74 10:19 PAGE 1-4

```
BJF1 000010R IO.WLB= ***** GX WRSTS 000004R
BJF2 000132R IS.SUC= ***** GX $DSW = ***** GX
IE.JPN= ***** GX RDSTS 000000R $XFER 000254RG
IO.RLB= ***** GX STCHK 001066R $$$ARG= 000002

. ABS. 000000 000
      001110 001
ERRORS DETECTED: 0

FREE CORE: 3586. WORDS
,MSG/LI:TTM=MSG.001
```

APPENDIX D

GLOSSARY OF RSX-11M TERMS

ASYNCHRONOUS SYSTEM TRAP (AST)

A system condition which occurs as a result of an external significant event such as completion of an I/O request. On occurrence of the significant event, control passes to an AST service routine, and the AST is added to an Executive first-in first-out queue for the task in which the service routine appears.

ATTACH

Dedicate a physical device unit for exclusive use by the task that requested attachment. Once the physical device unit has been attached by a task, using an IO.ATT I/O function, only that task can free the unit again for use by other tasks in the system. Attachment request attempted to a device unit already attached by another task will not be terminated until the attachment request can finally be honored; in other words, the attachment request is terminated only when the previous attachment is terminated, and no higher priority attachment requests are queued.

DETACH

Free an attached physical device unit for use by tasks other than the one that attached it. A physical device unit can only be detached, by means of an IO.DET I/O function, by the task that attached it, or by the Executive if the task is terminated with the device still attached.

DIRECTIVE

A type of system meta-instruction which is used to provide a facility inherent in the hardware by means of executive requests issued to the RSX-11M Executive. Directives are usually invoked by means of execution of expanded code from macros in the System Macro Library (RSXMAC.SML).

EVENT FLAG NUMBER

A number which can be specified in a QIO or other macro call to indicate to the issuing task which significant event has occurred. There are 64 event flags available in RSX-11M. Flags numbered 1 through 32 are local to a task; 33 through 64 are common to all tasks. Flags 25 through 32 and 57

APPENDIX D. GLOSSARY OF RSX-11M TERMS

through 64 are normally reserved for RSX-11M system software use. Each of the available flags can be referenced by number and can be used for communication and synchronization between user tasks, or between tasks and executive service requests, including I/O requests.

I/O STATUS BLOCK

A 2-word array (double-word) in which a code representing the final status of an I/O request is returned, if the address of the block is specified in the QIO macro call which generated the request. A code identifying the type of success or error is returned in the low-order byte of the first word, optional device-dependent information in the high-order byte, and the number of bytes transferred on a read or write in the second word of the block. Although the I/O Status Block is optional, it is the only way a user can guarantee that he will know the outcome of an I/O request.

LOGICAL ADDRESS

A logical address is a software representation of a hardware address. The use of the phrase "logical address" implies that some mapping occurs between "true", or hardware address and "artificial" or logical address. The reason for using logical addresses is that they simplify the way one deals with a hardware device or family of devices.

The logical address in RSX-11M refers to the relative position of a logical block on a volume. The volume is divided into logical blocks, each of which is assigned an address called a logical block number (LBN). All mass storage media are accessed by LBN (e.g., 17) rather than physical address (e.g., cylinder 5, track 3, sector 7).

LOGICAL BLOCK

A logical block in RSX-11M parlance refers to 512 bytes of storage which may be considered to be a discrete entity for logical purposes. In fact, it might be composed of odd-sized fragments of non-contiguous storage. Actually, a logical block generally refers to one or more physical blocks of a formatted or block-structured mass memory which compose the logical atom for access to the medium. Logical block may also refer to the in-core image of a logical block which is or will be on a mass storage device.

The concept of logical block is useful on file-structured devices, in that all such devices appear to share all characteristics but total number of blocks.

APPENDIX D. GLOSSARY OF RSX-11M TERMS

LOGICAL BLOCK NUMBER (LBN)

Sequential position of a logical block with respect to a collection of such blocks (which may compose a volume). If the collection of blocks had been written in logical order on a sequential medium, such as magnetic tape, the logical block number for any block would be the true position of the block on that medium, e.g., logical block 2 would be encountered just after LBN 1 and just before LBN 3.

LOGICAL UNIT NUMBER (LUN)

A number associated with a physical device unit during a task's I/O operations. Each task in the system can establish its own correspondence between LUNs and physical device units.

MACRO

A system capability which allows a user to generate Assembler instructions, data, or symbols in a predetermined format by providing actual arguments to the Assembler in a macro call included in a MACRO-11 program. Macros provide a standardized means of obtaining access to system services or resources by invocations from programs.

PRIORITY

A number associated with an RSX-11M task which indicates the relative position of that task among all tasks in the system. The priority is associated with a task at task build time and may be changed at run time. Legal priorities are in range 1 through 250, with greater magnitude indicating higher priority. If two tasks are identical in every way (i.e., resources used, etc.) except priority and are initiated at the same time, the task with the higher priority will complete first. I/O requests issued by a task assume the priority of that task and are honored according to the task's priority.

SIGNIFICANT EVENT

An event or condition which indicates a change in system status. In RSX-11M, a significant event is declared when an I/O operation completes and in some other cases as well. A declaration of a significant event indicates that the Executive should review the eligibility of all tasks in the system to determine which task should run next, since the significant event might unblock the execution of a higher priority task.

APPENDIX D. GLOSSARY OF RSX-11M TERMS

SYNCHRONOUS SYSTEM TRAP (SST)

A system condition which occurs as a result of an error or fault within the executing task. If the same instruction sequence were repeated, the same synchronous trap would occur. On recognition of a synchronous trap, control passes to an SST service routine. SSTs are not handled directly by the Executive as ASTs are.

VIRTUAL ADDRESS

A number which indicates relative position within a collection of logically-related granules of a storage medium. The fact that the medium itself may be virtual (e.g., 1 million bytes of addressable memory, but only 64K in core memory, the remainder on mass storage) is of little consequence; in fact, the ability to deal with a hierarchical or multi-level memory as if it were one medium is one of the principal advantages of systems supporting virtual addressing. In RSX-11M, virtual address generally refers to relative position within a task image, while VIRTUAL BLOCK NUMBER (VBN) refers to relative position within a file.

VIRTUAL BLOCK

One of a collection of blocks which make up a user file (or the core image of that file). The block is virtual only in that its address (VBN) refers to position within a file regardless of the file's allocation or placement on a storage medium. When a user accesses a file, he can think of the file as a virtual storage medium belonging to him. Virtual addressing within that file could be considered to be absolute addressing on a virtual medium.

INDEX

- Aborting a task, 4-9, 5-13, 7-7, 8-13
- Accessing UDC11 modules, 11-2
- A/D conversion control word, 10-3
- A/D converter I/O function codes, specific, B-4
- A/D converter status returns, 10-8
- Address, logical, D-2
- Address, virtual, D-4
- A/D functional capabilities, 10-10
- A/D gain ranges, use of, 10-11
- Adjusting buffer pointers, 12-13
- A/D programming hints, 10-11
- A/D value, switch gain, 12-14
- AD01-D analog to digital converter, 10-2
- AD01-D conversions, restricting the number of, 10-11
- AFC11 analog-to digital converter, 10-1
- AFC11, identical channel numbers on the, 10-11
- AFC11 sampling rate, 10-11
- Alphanumeric format (026 and 029), 8-11
- ALUN\$ macro, 1-16
- Analog data, input of, 10-6, 11-18
- Analog input channels, reading sequential, 10-6, 11-19
- Analog output, performing, 11-19
- Analog-to-digital converter, 10-2, 11-8
- Analog-to-digital converter, AFC11, 10-1
- Analog-to digital converter drivers, 10-1, A-2
- ASR-33/35 teletypes, 2-2
- Assembly procedure for UDCOM.MAC, 11-10
- Assigning a LUN, 1-16
- Assigning a LUN to AD01, 10-7
- Assigning a LUN to AF01, 10-7
- Assigning a LUN to LS0, 12-14
- Assigning a LUN to UD0, 11-20
- AST service, terminating, 1-21
- ASTX\$\$ macro, 1-21
- Asynchronous Line interface, DL11-E, 9-2
- Asynchronous process control I/O, synchronous and, 10-4, 11-15
- Asynchronous system trap, D-1
- Attach, D-1
- Attaching to an I/O device, 1-24
- Binary format, 8-12
- Block, I/O status, D-2
- Block length, 6-9
- Block, logical, D-2
- Block number, logical, D-3
- Block, reading a logical, 1-25
- Block, reading a virtual, 1-26
- Block size, 5-12
- Block, virtual, D-4
- Block, writing a logical, 1-26
- Block, writing a virtual, 1-27
- Buffer, circular, 11-26, 11-27, 11-32
- Buffer management, 12-34
- Buffer, output, 12-21
- Buffer pointers, adjusting, 12-13
- Buffer, reading data from an input, 12-20
- Buffers, control and data, 10-10
- Cancelling I/O requests, 1-25
- Capabilities, functional, 8-10
- Card input errors and recovery, 8-4
- Card limitation, input, 8-13
- Card reader check recovery, ready and, 8-7
- Card reader data formats, 8-11
- Card reader driver, A-2
- Cassette driver, 6-1, A-2
- Cassette I/O function codes, specific, B-4
- Cassette recovery procedures, 6-7
- Cassette tape, structure of, 6-7
- Changing LUN Assignments, 1-5
- Channel numbers on the AFC11, identical, 10-11
- Channel, reading a single A/D, 12-12
- Channels, reading sequential analog input, 11-19
- Characters, control, 2-8, 8-10
- Characteristics, tape, 5-5
- Checkpointable tasks, 11-31
- Circular buffer, 11-26, 11-27, 11-32
- Clock and sampling rates, 12-33
- Code conversion, ESCape, 2-12
- Codes, directive, B-3
- Codes, I/O function, B-3
- Codes, return, 1-28
- Codes, specific communication I/O function, B-5
- Common block, 11-14
- Common block, linking a task to the UDC11, 11-14

Communication drivers, A-2
 Communication I/O function codes,
 specific, B-5
 Communications drivers programming
 example, 9-9
 Communications drivers programming
 hints, 9-8
 Conditions, directive, 1-29
 Conditions, I/O, status, 1-31
 Contact interrupt data, reading,
 11-26
 Contact interrupt point, reading a,
 11-25
 Connecting to contact interrupts,
 11-20
 Connecting to timer interrupts,
 11-21
 Contact interrupt digital input,
 11-5
 Contact interrupts, connecting to,
 11-20
 Contact interrupts, disconnecting
 from, 11-22
 Contact sense fields, reading
 several, 11-23
 Control and Data buffers, 10-10
 Control characters, 2-8, 8-10
 Control function, RT02-C, 2-13
 Control word, A/D conversion, 10-3
 Converter, analog-to-digital,
 11-8
 Creating a global common block,
 11-12
 Creating the UDC11 driver, 11-1

Data formats, card reader, 8-11
 DECTape driver, 4-1, A-3
 DECTape I/O function codes,
 specific, B-5
 DECTape recovery procedures, 4-7
 DECTape transfers, 4-8
 DECwriters, LA30, 2-2
 DECwriter, LA36, 2-2
 Defining the UDC11 configuration,
 11-9
 Detach, D-1
 Detaching from an I/O device, 1-24
 Device, attaching to an I/O, 1-24
 Device, detaching from an I/O,
 1-24
 Device-specific QIO function,
 4-4, 5-4, 6-3, 8-3, 9-5, 10-2
 11-4, 12-2
 Device specific QIO functions
 (synchronous), 12-4
 Devices, RSX-11M, 1-2
 DH11 asynchronous serial line
 multiplexer, 2-12
 DI11 asynchronous serial line
 interface, 2-12

Direct access, 11-8
 Direction, speed considerations when
 reversing, 4-9
 Directive, D-1
 Directive codes, B-3
 Directive conditions, 1-29
 Directive error codes, B-3
 Directive, .MCALL, 1-15
 Directive parameter blocks, 1-12
 Directive success codes, B-3
 Disconnecting from contact inter-
 rupts, 11-22
 Disconnecting from timer inter-
 rupts, 11-23
 Disk driver, 3-11, A-3
 Disk, RF11/RS11 fixed-head, 3-1
 Disk, RJP04 pack, 3-2
 Disk, RJS03 fixed-head, 3-2
 Disk, RJS04 fixed-head, 3-2
 Disk, RK11/RK05 cartridge, 3-2
 Disk, RP11-C/RP03 pack, 3-2
 Display in LED lights, 12-20
 DJ11 asynchronous serial line
 multiplexer, 2-12
 DL11-E asynchronous line interface,
 9-2
 DP11 synchronous line interface,
 9-2
 Driver services, UDC11, 11-2
 DU11 synchronous line interface, 9-3

End-of-file and IO.SPF, 6-8
 End-of-tape, logical, 6-9
 Errors and recovery, card input,
 8-4
 Error codes, directive, B-3
 Error codes, I/O status, B-1
 Errors, IO.ADS and ADC, 12-32
 ESCape code conversion, 2-12
 Even-parity zero, writing and,
 5-13
 Event flag number, D-1
 Event flag, waiting for an, 1-21
 Events, significant, 1-10, D-3

Flag number, event, D-1
 Floating-point, 12-14
 Format, binary, 8-12
 Format control, vertical, 7-6
 Format, QIO macro, 1-7
 Formats, card reader data, 8-11
 Format (026 and 029), alphanumeric,
 8-11
 Fortran interface, 10-4, 11-14, 12-9
 FORTRAN interface subroutines,
 LPS11, 12-11
 Fortran interface values, 10-10,
 11-31, 12-32
 Fortran subroutine summary, 10-5,
 11-16

Functional capabilities, 8-10
 Functional capabilities, A/D, 10-10
 Function, IO.ADS, 12-5
 Function, IO.HIS, 12-6
 Function, IO.LED, 12-3
 Function, IO.MDA, 12-7
 Function, IO.MDI, 12-7
 Function, IO.MDO, 12-7
 Function, IO.REL, 12-3
 Function, IO.SDI, 12-4
 Function, IO.SDO, 12-4
 Function, IO.STP, 12-8
 Functions, summary of, I/O, A-1

Gain A/D value, switch, 12-14
 Gain ranges, use of A/D, 10-11
 Get LUN information macro, 2-3, 3-2,
 4-1, 5-2, 6-1, 7-2, 8-1, 9-3,
 10-2, 11-3, 12-2
 Global common block, 11-12
 Global common block, creating a,
 11-12
 Glossary, D-1
 GLUN\$ macro, 1-18

Half-duplex considerations, 9-8
 Hints, programming, 2-12, 4-8, 5-12,
 6-8, 7-6, 8-13
 Histogram sampling, 12-17

Identical channel numbers on the
 AFC11, 10-11
 Importance of rewinding, 6-8
 Initializing a timer module, 11-28
 Input and output, use of ADJLPS for,
 12-35
 Input buffer, reading data from an,
 12-20
 In-progress synchronous function,
 12-21
 Input card limitation, 8-13
 Input, contact interrupt digital,
 11-5
 Input of analog data, 10-6, 11-18
 Input, reading digital, 12-19
 Interface, D111 asynchronous serial
 line, 2-12
 IO.ADS and ADC errors, 12-32
 IO.ADS function, 12-5
 IO.ATT, 1-24
 I/O completion, 1-27
 IO.DET, 1-24
 I/O function and status codes,
 B-1
 I/O function codes, B-3
 I/O function codes, specific A/D
 converter, B-4

I/O function codes, specific cassette,
 B-4
 I/O function codes, specific communi-
 cation, B-5
 I/O function codes, specific DECTape,
 B-5
 I/O function codes, specific magtape,
 B-6
 I/O function codes, specific LPS, B-5
 I/O function codes, specific UDC, B-6
 I/O function codes, standard, B-4
 I/O functions, standard, 1-23
 I/O functions, summary of, A-1
 IO.HIS function, 12-6
 IO.INL, 9-9
 IO.KIL, 1-25
 IO.LED function, 12-3
 IO.INL QIO functions, 9-6
 IO.MDA function, 12-7
 IO.MDI function, 12-7
 IO.MDO function, 12-7
 I/O, Overview of RSX-11M, 1-1
 I/O related macros, 1-13
 IO.REL function, 12-3
 I/O requests, cancelling, 1-25
 I/O request, issuing an, 1-5, 1-15
 IO.RLB, 1-25
 IO.RNS QIO function, 9-6
 IO.RVB, 1-26
 IO.RWU, 5-4
 IO.SDI function, 12-4
 IO.SDO function, 12-4
 IO.SEC, 5-5
 IO.SPB and IO.SPF, space functions,
 6-9
 IO.SPF, end-of-file and, 6-8
 IO.SPF, space functions, IOLSPB and,
 6-9
 I/O status block, 12-33, D-2
 I/O status conditions, 1-31, 8-8
 I/O status codes, B-1
 I/O status error codes, B-1
 I/O status success codes, B-3
 IO.STP function, 12-8
 I/O status word, 12-31
 I/O, synchronous and asynchronous
 process control, 11-15
 IO.SYN QIO function, 9-6
 IO.TRM QIO functions, 9-6
 IO.WLB, 1-26
 IO.WNS QIO function, 9-6
 IO.WVB, 1-27
 ISB status array, the, 10-4, 12-9
 Isb status array, 11-15
 Issuing an I/O request, 1-5, 1-15

Keys, special, 2-8, 2-9
 KSR-33/35 teletypes. 2-2

Laboratory peripheral system driver, 12-1, A-3
 Latching an output relay, 12-22
 Latching digital output, 11-8
 Latching or unlatching several fields, 11-24
 LA30 DECwriters, 2-2
 LA36 DECwriter, 2-2
 LED lights, displaying in, 12-20
 Length, block, 6-9
 Library, system object module, 11-12
 Lights, displaying in LED, 12-20
 Line printer driver, 7-1, A-4
 Linking a task to the UDC11 common block, 11-14
 Logical address, D-2
 Logical block, reading a, 1-25
 Logical block number, D-3
 Logical block, writing a, 1-26
 Logical end-of-tape, 6-9
 Logical Unit Number, 1-4, D-3
 Logical unit table, 1-4
 Logical units, 1-3
 Low-traffic sync character considerations, 9-8
 LS11 line printer, 7-2
 LPS I/O function codes, specific, B-5
 LPS11, FORTRAN interface subroutines, 12-11
 LP11 line printer, 7-2
 LPS status returns, 12-27
 LUN, assigning a, 1-16
 LUN assignments, changing, 1-5
 LUN information, retrieving, 1-18
 LUN information macro, get, 9-3, 10-2, 11-3, 12-2
 LUN to AD01, assigning a, 10-7
 LUN to AF01, assigning a, 10-7
 LUN to LS0, assigning a, 12-14
 LUN to UD0, assigning a, 11-20
 LV11 line printer, 7-2

 Message-oriented communication drivers, 9-1
 Macro, D-3
 Macro, get LUN information, 2-3, 3-2, 4-1, 5-2, 6-1, 7-2, 8-1
 Macro,
 ALUN\$, 1-16
 ASTX\$\$, 1-21
 GLUN\$, 1-18
 WTSE\$, 1-21
 QIO\$, 1-15
 Macros, I/O-related, 1-13
 Magtape I/O function codes, specific, B-6
 Magnetic tape drivers, 5-1, A-4
 .MCALL directive, 1-15

 Multiplexer, DH11 asynchronous serial line, 2-12
 Multiplexer, DJ11 asynchronous serial line, 2-12

 Number, logical block, D-3
 Number, logical unit, 1-4, D-3
 Numbering conventions, 11-31
 Number of AD01-D conversions, restricting the, 10-11

 Operator interventions, 5-4
 Output buffer, 12-21
 Output, latching digital, 11-8
 Output relay, latching an, 12-22
 Output, synchronous D/A, 12-24
 Output, synchronous digital, 12-26
 Output, writing digital, 12-19
 Output, use of ADJLPS for input and, 12-35
 Overview of RSX-11M I/O, 1-1

 Parameter blocks, directive, 1-12
 Parity support, vertical, 9-8
 Performing analog output, 11-19
 Print line truncation, 7-7
 Printer, LP11 line, 7-2
 Printer, LS11 line, 7-2
 Printer, LV11 line, 7-2
 Priority, D-3
 Process control I/O, synchronous and asynchronous, 10-4, 11-15
 Programming example, communications drivers, 9-9
 Programming hints, 2-12, 4-8, 5-12, 6-8, 7-6, 8-13
 Programming hints, A/D, 10-11
 Programming hints, communication drivers, 9-8
 Programming hints, UDC11, 11-31
 Pulsing several fields, 11-24

 QIO\$ Macro, 1-15
 QIO macro, 2-5, 3-3, 4-2, 5-3, 6-2, 7-3, 8-2, 9-4, 10-2, 11-3
 QIO Macro format, 1-7
 QIO functions, device-specific, 4-4 5-4, 6-3, 8-3, 10-2, 11-4, 12-2, 12-8
 QIO functions,
 IO.INL, 9-6
 IO.RNS, 9-6
 IO.SYN, 9-6
 IO.WNS, 9-6
 QIO functions, standard, 4-2, 5-2, 6-3, 8-2, 9-4, 10-2, 11-3, 12-2
 QIO functions, (synchronous), device-specific, 12-4

Rate, AFC11, sampling, 10-11
 Rates, clock and sampling, 12-32
 Reading a contact interrupt point, 11-25
 Reading a logical block, 1-25
 Reading a single A/D channel, 12-12
 Reading a timer module, 11-27
 Reading a virtual block, 1-26
 Reading contact interrupt data, 11-26
 Reading data from an input buffer, 12-20
 Reading digital input, 12-19
 Reading sequential analog input channels, 10-6, 11-19
 Reading several contact sense fields, 11-23
 Reading timer interrupt data, 11-27
 Reads and writes, retry procedures for, 5-12
 Ready and card reader check recovery, 8-7
 Ready recovery, 7-5
 Recovery, card input errors and, 8-4
 Recovery procedures, cassette, 6-7
 Recovery procedures, DECTape, 4-7
 Recovery, ready, 7-5
 Recovery, ready and card reader check, 8-7
 Recovery, select, 4-8, 5-12
 Redundancy checking, 9-8
 Relay, latching an output, 12-22
 Resetting tape characteristics, 5-13
 Restricting the number of AD01-D conversions, 10-11
 Retrieving LUN information, 1-18
 Retrieving system macros, 1-15
 Retry procedures for reads and writes, 5-12
 Return codes, 1-28
 Returns, status, 2-6, 3-4, 4-4, 5-9, 6-4, 7-4, 8-4
 Reverse reading and writing, 4-8
 Reversing direction, speed considerations when, 4-9
 Rewinding, importance of, 6-8
 RF11/RS11 fixed-head disk, 3-1
 RJP04 pack disk, 3-2
 RJS03 fixed-head disk, 3-2
 RJS04 fixed-head disk, 3-2
 RK11/RK05 cartridge disk, 3-2
 RP11-C/RP03 pack disk, 3-2
 RSX-11M Devices, 1-2
 RSX-11M I/O, Overview of, 1-1
 RT02 alphanumeric display terminal, 2-3
 RT02-C badge reader/alphanumeric display terminal, 2-3
 RT02-C control function, 2-13
 RUBOUT character, 7-6
 Sampling, histogram, 12-17
 Sampling rate, AFC11, 10-11
 Sampling rates, clock and, 12-33
 Sampling, synchronous A/D, 12-22
 Sampling, synchronous digital input, 12-15
 Schmitt trigger, 12-6
 Select recovery, 4-8, 5-12
 Significant event, 1-10, D-3
 Single A/D channel, reading a, 12-12
 Size, block, 5-12
 Space functions, IO.SPB and IO.SPF, 6-9
 Special keys, 2-8, 2-9
 Specific A/D converter I/O function codes, B-4
 Specific cassette I/O function codes, B-4
 Specific communication I/O function codes, B-5
 Specific DECTape I/O function codes, B-5
 Specific LPS I/O function codes, B-5
 Specific magtape I/O function codes, B-6
 Specific UDC I/O function codes, B-6
 Speed considerations when reversing direction, 4-9
 Standard I/O functions, 1-23
 Standard I/O function codes, B-4
 Standard QIO functions, 4-2, 5-3, 6-3, 8-2, 9-4, 10-2, 11-2, 12-2
 Status array, ISB, 12-9
 Status block, I/O, 12-33, D-2
 Status codes, I/O, B-1
 Status codes, I/O function and, B-1
 Status condition, I/O, 1-31, 8-8
 Status error codes, I/O, B-1
 Status returns, 2-6, 3-4, 4-4, 5-9, 6-4, 7-4, 8-4, 9-7
 Status returns, A/D converter, 10-8
 Status returns, LPS, 12-27
 Status returns, UDC11, 11-28
 Status success codes, I/O, B-3
 Status word, I/O, 12-31
 Structure of cassette tape, 6-7
 Success codes, Directive, B-3
 Success codes, I/O status, B-3
 Summary of I/O functions, A-1
 Switch gain A/D value, 12-14
 Symbols defined by UDCOM.MAC, 11-10
 Sync character considerations, low-traffic, 9-8
 Synchronous A/D sampling, 12-22
 Synchronous and asynchronous process control I/O, 10-4, 11-15
 Synchronous D/A output, 12-24
 Synchronous, device-specific QIO functions, 12-4
 Synchronous digital input sampling, 12-15

Synchronous digital output, 12-26
 Synchronous function, in-progress,
 12-21
 Synchronous line interface, DP11, 9-2
 Synchronous line interface, DU11,
 9-3
 Synchronous subroutines, 12-10
 Synchronous system trap, D-4
 System macros, retrieving, 1-15
 System object module library, 11-12
 System traps, 1-11
 System trap, synchronous, D-4

Table, logical unit, 1-4
 Tape characteristics, 5-5
 Tape characteristics, resetting,
 5-13
 Tape, structure of cassette, 6-7
 Tape, TJ16 magnetic, 5-2
 Tape, TM11 magnetic, 5-2
 Teletypes, ASR-33/35
 Teletypes, KSR-33/35
 Terminal driver, 2-1, A-5
 Terminal line truncation, 2-12
 Terminal, RT02 alphanumeric display,
 2-3
 Terminal, RT02-C badge reader/
 alphanumeric display, 2-3
 Terminal, VT50 alphanumeric
 display, 2-3
 Terminal, VT05B alphanumeric
 display, 2-3
 Terminating AST service, 1-21
 The Isb status array, 10-4
 Timer, 11-7
 Timer interrupt data, reading,
 11-27
 Timer interrupts, connecting to,
 11-21
 Timer interrupts, disconnecting
 from, 11-23
 Timer module, initializing a, 11-28
 Timer module, reading a, 11-27
 TJ10 magnetic tape, 5-2
 TM11 magnetic tape, 5-2
 Transmission validation, 9-8
 Trap, asynchronous system, D-1
 Trap, synchronous system, D-4
 Traps, System, 1-1
 Truncation, print line, 7-7

UDC I/O function codes, specific, B-6
 UDC11 configuration, defining the,
 11-9
 UDC11 driver, creating the, 11-1
 UDC11 driver services, 11-2
 UDC11 modules, accessing, 11-2
 UDC11 programming hints, 11-31
 UDC11 status returns, 11-28
 UDC11 symbolic definitions, 11-12
 Unit number, logical, D-3
 Universal digital controller driver,
 11-1, A-5
 Unlatching several fields, latching
 or, 11-24
 Use of A/D gain ranges, 10-11
 Use of ADJLPS for input and output,
 12-35

Verification of write operations,
 6-9
 Vertical format control, 7-6
 Vertical parity support, 9-8
 Virtual address, D-4
 Virtual block, D-4
 Virtual block, reading a, 1-26
 Virtual block, writing a, 1-27
 VT50 alphanumeric display terminal,
 2-3
 VT05B alphanumeric display terminal,
 2-3

Waiting for an event flag, 1-21
 Write operations, verification of,
 6-9
 Writes, retry procedures for reads
 and, 5-12
 Writing a logical block, 1-26
 Writing and even-parity zero, 5-13
 Writing a virtual block, 1-27
 Writing digital output, 12-19
 Writing, reverse reading and, 4-8
 WTSE\$ macro, 1-21

HOW TO OBTAIN SOFTWARE INFORMATION

SOFTWARE NEWSLETTERS, MAILING LIST

The Software Communications Group, located at corporate headquarters in Maynard, publishes software newsletters for the various DIGITAL products. Newsletters are published monthly, and keep the user informed about customer software problems and solutions, new software products, documentation corrections, as well as programming notes and techniques.

There are two similar levels of service:

- . The Software Dispatch
- . The Digital Software News

The Software Dispatch is part of the Software Maintenance Service. This service applies to the following software products:

PDP-9/15
RSX-11D
DOS/BATCH
RSTS-E
DECsystem-10

A Digital Software News for the PDP-11 and a Digital Software News for the PDP-8/12 are available to any customer who has purchased PDP-11 or PDP-8/12 software.

A collection of existing problems and solutions for a given software system is published periodically. A customer receives this publication with his initial software kit with the delivery of his system. This collection would be either a Software Dispatch Review or Software Performance Summary depending on the system ordered.

A mailing list of users who receive software newsletters is also maintained by Software Communications. Users must sign-up for the newsletter they desire. This can be done by either completing the form supplied with the Review or Summary or by writing to:

Software Communications
P.O. Box F
Maynard, Massachusetts 01754

SOFTWARE PROBLEMS

Questions or problems relating to DIGITAL's software should be reported as follows:

North and South American Submitters:

Upon completion of Software Performance Report (SPR) form remove last copy and send remainder to:

Software Communications
P.O. Box F
Maynard, Massachusetts 01754

The acknowledgement copy will be returned along with a blank SPR form upon receipt. The acknowledgement will contain a DIGITAL assigned SPR number. The SPR number or the preprinted number should be referenced in any future correspondence. Additional SPR forms may be obtained from the above address.

All International Submitters:

Upon completion of the SPR form, reserve the last copy and send the remainder to the SPR Center in the nearest DIGITAL office. SPR forms are also available from our SPR Centers.

PROGRAMS AND MANUALS

Software and manuals should be ordered by title and order number. In the United States, send orders to the nearest distribution center.

Digital Equipment Corporation
Software Distribution Center
146 Main Street
Maynard, Massachusetts 01754

Digital Equipment Corporation
Software Distribution Center
1400 Terra Bella
Mountain View, California 94043

Outside of the United States, orders should be directed to the nearest Digital Field Sales Office or representative.

USERS SOCIETY

DECUS, Digital Equipment Computers Users Society, maintains a user exchange center for user-written programs and technical application information. The Library contains approximately 1,900 programs for all DIGITAL computer lines. Executive routines, editors, debuggers, special functions, games, maintenance and various other classes of programs are available.

DECUS Program Library Catalogs are routinely updated and contain lists and abstracts of all programs according to computer line:

- . PDP-8, FOCAL-8, BASIC-8, PDP-12
- . PDP-7/9, 9, 15
- . PDP-11, RSTS-11
- . PDP-6/10, 10

Forms and information on acquiring and submitting programs to the DECUS Library may be obtained from the DECUS office.

In addition to the catalogs, DECUS also publishes the following:

- DECUSCOPE -The Society's technical newsletter, published bi-monthly, aimed at facilitating the interchange of technical information among users of DIGITAL computers and at disseminating news items concerning the Society. Circulation reached 19,000 in May, 1974.
- PROCEEDINGS OF THE DIGITAL EQUIPMENT USERS SOCIETY -Contains technical papers presented at DECUS Symposia held twice a year in the United States, once a year in Europe, Australia, and Canada.
- MINUTES OF THE DECsystem-10 SESSIONS -A report of the DECsystem-10 sessions held at the two United States DECUS Symposia.
- COPY-N-Mail -A monthly mailed communique among DECsystem-10 users.
- LUG/SIG -Mailing of Local User Group (LUG) and Special Interest Group (SIG) communique, aimed at providing closer communication among users of a specific product or application.

Further information on the DECUS Library, publications, and other DECUS activities is available from the DECUS offices listed below:

DECUS
Digital Equipment Corporation
146 Main Street
Maynard, Massachusetts 01754

DECUS EUROPE
Digital Equipment Corp. International
(Europe)
P.O. Box 340
1211 Geneva 26
Switzerland

READER'S COMMENTS

NOTE: This form is for document comments only. Problems with software should be reported on a Software Problem Report (SPR) form (see the HOW TO OBTAIN SOFTWARE INFORMATION page).

Did you find errors in this manual? If so, specify by page.

Did you find this manual understandable, usable, and well-organized? Please make suggestions for improvement.

Is there sufficient documentation on associated system programs required for use of the software described in this manual? If not, what material is missing and where should it be placed?

Please indicate the type of user/reader that you most nearly represent.

- Assembly language programmer
- Higher-level language programmer
- Occasional programmer (experienced)
- User with little programming experience
- Student programmer
- Non-programmer interested in computer concepts and capabilities

Name _____ Date _____

Organization _____

Street _____

City _____ State _____ Zip Code _____

or
Country

If you do not require a written reply, please check here.

Please cut along this line.

Fold Here

Do Not Tear - Fold Here and Staple

FIRST CLASS
PERMIT NO. 33
MAYNARD, MASS.

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL
NO POSTAGE STAMP NECESSARY IF MAILED IN THE UNITED STATES

Postage will be paid by:

digital

Software Communications
P. O. Box F
Maynard, Massachusetts 01754

